

INTRODUCTION TO ANALYSIS

CARSON JAMES

CONTENTS

Preface	2
1. Set Theory	3
1.1. Product Sets	3
1.2. Quotient Sets	4
2. Real and Complex Numbers	4
2.1. Real Numbers	4
3. Metric Spaces	5
3.1. Introduction	5
3.2. Product Spaces	8
4. Topology	9
4.1. Introduction	9
4.2. Continuous Maps	13
4.3. Nets	18
4.4. Compactness	21
4.5. Product Topology	22
4.6. Quotient Topology	23
4.7. Semi-continuity	26
5. Banach Spaces	27
5.1. Introduction	27
5.2. Bounded Operators	29
5.3. Direct Sums	35
5.4. Quotient Spaces	38
5.5. The Hahn-Banach Theorem	42
5.6. The Baire Category and Closed Graph Theorems	50
5.7. Weak and Weak-* Topologies	55
5.8. Duality	57
5.9. Compact Operators	61
5.10. Multilinear Maps	62
5.11. Banach Algebras	65
6. Hilbert Spaces	68
6.1. Introduction	68
6.2. Operators and Functionals	74
6.3. Tensor Products	77
7. Differentiation	82
7.1. The Gateaux Derivative	82
7.2. The Frechet Derivative	86
7.3. The Calc I Derivative	90

7.4. Mean Value Theorem	92
7.5. Taylor's Theorem	94
7.6. The Gradient	100
8. Convexity	101
8.1. Introduction	101
8.2. The Subdifferential	106
8.3. Conjugacy	113
9. Topological Groups	114
9.1. Topological Groups	114
9.2. Automorphism Groups of Metric Spaces	117
10. Group Actions on Metric Spaces	119
10.1. Introduction	119
10.2. Induced Metrics on Orbit Spaces	120
10.3. Fundamental Examples	124
11. Appendix	126
11.1. Summation	126
11.2. Asymptotic Notation	127
References	128

PREFACE

[cc-by-nc-sa](#)

1. SET THEORY

1.1. Product Sets.

Definition 1.1.1. Let $(X_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ be a collection of sets. We define the **Cartesian product**, denoted $\prod_{\alpha \in A} X_\alpha$, by

$$\prod_{\alpha \in A} X_\alpha = \{f : A \rightarrow \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} X_\alpha : \text{for each } \alpha \in A, f(\alpha) \in X_\alpha\}$$

Definition 1.1.2. Let $(X_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ be a collection of sets. For $\alpha \in A$, we define the **projection map onto** X_α , denoted $\pi_\alpha : \prod_{\alpha \in A} X_\alpha \rightarrow X_\alpha$, by

$$\pi_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha)$$

1.2. Quotient Sets.

Definition 1.2.1. Let X be a set and \sim an equivalence relation on X . We define the **quotient set** of X by \sim , denoted X/\sim , by

$$X/\sim = \{\bar{x} : x \in X\}$$

2. REAL AND COMPLEX NUMBERS

Note 2.0.1. As a starting point, we will take as fact the existence of the **natural numbers**

$$\mathbb{N} = \{1, 2, \dots\}$$

the **integers**

$$\mathbb{Z} = \{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$$

and the **rational numbers**

$$\mathbb{Q} = \left\{ \frac{a}{b} : a \in \mathbb{Z}, b \in \mathbb{N} \right\}$$

2.1. Real Numbers.

Definition 2.1.1. Let X be a set and \leq a relation on X . Then \leq is said to be a **total order** if for each $a, b, c \in X$,

- (1) $a \leq a$
- (2) $a \leq b$ and $b \leq c$ implies that $a \leq c$
- (3) $a \leq b$ and $b \leq a$ implies that $a = b$
- (4) $a \leq b$ or $b \leq a$

Exercise 2.1.2. We define the relation \leq on \mathbb{Q} defined by

$$\frac{a}{b} \leq \frac{c}{d} \text{ iff } ad \leq bc$$

Then \leq is a total order of \mathbb{Q} .

Proof. Let $\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d}, \frac{e}{f} \in \mathbb{Q}$. Then

- (1) $\frac{a}{b} \leq \frac{a}{b}$ since $ab \leq ab$.
- (2) if $\frac{a}{b} \leq \frac{c}{d}$ and $\frac{c}{d} \leq \frac{e}{f}$, then $ad \leq bc$ and $cf \leq de$. Multiplying the first inequality by f and the second inequality by b , we obtain $adf \leq bcf \leq bde$. Dividing both sides by d yields $af \leq be$. Hence $\frac{a}{b} \leq \frac{e}{f}$.
- (3) if $\frac{a}{b} \leq \frac{c}{d}$ and $\frac{c}{d} \leq \frac{a}{b}$, then $ad \leq bc$ and $bc \leq ad$. This implies that $ad = bc$. Hence $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$.
- (4)

□

3. METRIC SPACES

3.1. Introduction.

Definition 3.1.1. Let M be a set and $d : M \times M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then d is said to be a **metric on** M if for each $x, y, z \in M$,

- (1) $d(x, y) = 0$ iff $x = y$
- (2) $d(x, y) \leq d(x, z) + d(z, y)$

Exercise 3.1.2. Let M be a set and $d : M \times M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a metric on M . Then for each $x, y \in M$, $d(x, y) \geq 0$.

Proof. Let $x, y, z \in M$. Then $d(x, z) \leq d(x, y) + d(y, z)$. This implies that $d(x, z) - d(x, y) \leq d(y, z)$. Since z is arbitrary, taking $z = x$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} d(x, x) - d(x, y) &\leq d(y, x) \implies -d(x, y) \leq d(x, y) \\ &\implies 0 \leq 2d(x, y) \\ &\implies d(x, y) \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 3.1.3. Let M be a set and $d : M \times M \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ a metric. Then (M, d) is called a **metric space**.

Definition 3.1.4. Let (M, d) be a metric space and $A, B \subset M$. We define the **distance between A and B** , denoted $d(A, B)$, by

$$d(A, B) = \inf_{\substack{a \in A \\ b \in B}} d(a, b)$$

Exercise 3.1.5. Let (M, d) be a metric space. Then for each $A, B \subset M$ and $c \in M$,

$$d(A, B) \leq d(A, c) + d(c, B)$$

Proof. Let $A, B \subset M$, $c \in M$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $a \in A$ and $b \in B$ such that $d(a, c) < d(A, c) + \epsilon/2$ and $d(c, b) < d(c, B) + \epsilon/2$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d(A, B) &\leq d(a, b) \\ &\leq d(a, c) + d(c, b) \\ &< d(A, c) + \frac{\epsilon}{2} + d(c, B) + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \\ &= d(A, c) + d(c, B) + \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary, $d(A, B) \leq d(A, c) + d(c, B)$. □

Definition 3.1.6. Let M be a set, $d_1, d_2 : M \times M \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ metrics on M . Then d_1 and d_2 are said to be

- **topologically equivalent** if for each $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M$ and $x \in M$, $x_n \xrightarrow{d_1} x$ iff $x_n \xrightarrow{d_2} x$
- **equivalent** if there exist $A, B > 0$ such that

$$Ad_1 \leq d_2 \leq Bd_1$$

Definition 3.1.7. Let (X, d_X) and (Y, d_Y) be metric spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then f is said to be **Lipchitz** if there exists $K \geq 0$ such that for each $a, b \in X$,

$$d_Y(f(a), f(b)) \leq Kd_X(a, b)$$

Exercise 3.1.8. Let (X, d_X) and (Y, d_Y) be metric spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. If f is Lipchitz, then f is uniformly continuous.

Proof. By definition, there exists $K \geq 0$ such that for each $a, b \in X$,

$$d_Y(f(a), f(b)) \leq K d_X(a, b)$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \epsilon/(K + 1)$. Let $a, b \in X$. Suppose that $d_X(a, b) < \delta$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d_Y(f(a), f(b)) &\leq K d_X(a, b) \\ &< K \delta \\ &= K \frac{\epsilon}{K + 1} \\ &< \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 3.1.9. Let (X, d_X) and (Y, d_Y) be metric spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in X$. Then f is said to be **locally Lipchitz at** x_0 if there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$ such that f is Lipschitz on U .

Definition 3.1.10. Let (X, d_X) and (Y, d_Y) be metric spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then f is said to be **locally Lipchitz** if for each $x_0 \in X$, f is locally Lipschitz at x_0 .

Definition 3.1.11. Let X, Y be metric spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$. Then T is said to be an **isometry** if for each $x_1, x_2 \in X$, $d(Tx_1, Tx_2) = d(x_1, x_2)$.

Exercise 3.1.12. Let X, Y be metric spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$ an isometry. Then T is injective.

Proof. Let $x_1, x_2 \in X$. Suppose that $Tx_1 = Tx_2$. Then $0 = d(Tx_1, Tx_2) = d(x_1, x_2)$. So $x_1 = x_2$. Hence T is injective. □

Note 3.1.13. Let X, Y be metric spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$ an isometry. Then T is clearly continuous. If T is surjective, then T^{-1} is an isometry and therefore continuous. Hence T is a homeomorphism.

Definition 3.1.14. Let (M, d) be a metric space. Then (M, d) is said to be a **Polish space** if (M, d) is complete and separable.

Exercise 3.1.15. Let (X, d) be a compact metric space, $E \subset X$ closed, $U \subset X$ open. Suppose that $E \subset U$. Then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for each $x \in E$, $B(x, \delta) \subset U$.

Proof. Since X is compact, E and U^c are compact. Then there exist $x_0 \in E$ and $y_0 \in U^c$ such that $d(E, U^c) = d(x_0, y_0)$. Since $E \cap U^c = \emptyset$, $x_0 \neq y_0$ and $d(E, U^c) > 0$. Put $\epsilon = d(E, U^c)$ and $\delta = \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. Let $x \in E$, $w \in B(x, \delta)$ and $y \in U^c$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d(y, w) &\geq d(y, x) - d(x, w) \\ &> \epsilon - \delta \\ &= \epsilon - \frac{\epsilon}{2} \\ &= \frac{\epsilon}{2} \\ &> 0 \end{aligned}$$

So $y \neq w$. Since $y \in U^c$ and $w \in B(x, \delta) \subset U$ are arbitrary, $B(x, \delta) \subset U$. □

Definition 3.1.16. Let S be a set, (M, d) a metric space and $B(S, M) = \{f : S \rightarrow M : f \text{ is bounded}\}$. We define the **supremum metric**, denoted $d_u : B(S, M) \times B(S, M) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$, by

$$d_u(f, g) = \sup_{x \in X} d(f(x), g(x))$$

Exercise 3.1.17. Let X be a set, (Y, d_Y) , (Z, d_Z) metric spaces, $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset B(X, Y)$, $f \in B(X, Y)$ and $g \in C(Y, Z)$. Suppose that g is uniformly continuous. If $f_n \xrightarrow{u} f$, then $g \circ f_n \xrightarrow{u} g \circ f$.

Proof. Suppose that $f_n \xrightarrow{u} f$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Uniform continuity of g implies that there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for each $y_1, y_2 \in Y$, $d_Y(y_1, y_2) < \delta$ implies that $d_Z(g(y_1), g(y_2)) < \epsilon/2$. Uniform convergence implies that there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq N$ implies that $d_u(f_n, f) < \delta/2$. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Suppose that $n \geq N$. Let $x \in X$. Then $d_Y(f_n(x), f(x)) < \delta$. This implies that $d_Z(g(f_n(x)), g(f(x))) < \epsilon/2$. Hence $\sup_{x \in X} d_Z(g \circ f_n(x), g \circ f(x)) \leq \epsilon/2$. Thus

$d_u(g \circ f_n, g \circ f) < \epsilon$. So $g \circ f_n \xrightarrow{u} g \circ f$. □

Definition 3.1.18. Let (X, d) be a metric space. Define

- (1) $\text{Aut}(X) = \{\sigma : X \rightarrow X : \sigma \text{ is a homeomorphism}\}$
- (2) $\text{Aut}(X, d) = \{\sigma : X \rightarrow X : \sigma \text{ is an isometric isomorphism}\}$

Exercise 3.1.19. Let (X, d) be a compact metric space, $E \subset X$ closed, $U \subset X$ open. Suppose that $E \subset U$. Let $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in \text{Aut}(X)$, $f \in \text{Aut}(X)$. Suppose that $f_n \xrightarrow{u} f$. Then there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \geq N$, $f(E) \subset f_n(U)$.

Proof. Since f is a homeomorphism, E is closed and U is open, $f(E)$ is compact and $f(U)$ is open and $f(E) \subset f(U)$. Then $d(f(E), f(U^c)) > 0$. Put $\epsilon = d(f(E), f(U^c))$. Choose $\delta = \epsilon/2$. Then there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq N$ implies that $\sup_{z \in X} d(f(z), f_n(z)) < \delta$.

Let $n \geq N$, $x \in E$ and $w \in B(f(x), \delta)$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that $w \in f_n(U^c)$. Then there exist $p \in U^c$ such that $w = f_n(p)$. Put $z = f(p) \in f(U^c)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon &\leq d(f(x), z) \\ &\leq d(f(x), w) + d(w, z) \\ &= d(f(x), w) + d(f_n(p), f(p)) \\ &< \delta + \delta \\ &= \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction. So $w \in f_n(U)$. Hence $B(f(x), \delta) \subset f_n(U)$ □

3.2. Product Spaces.

4. TOPOLOGY

4.1. Introduction.

Definition 4.1.1. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$. Then \mathcal{T} is said to be a **topology on X** if

- (1) $X, \emptyset \in \mathcal{T}$
- (2) for each $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{T}$,

$$\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}$$

- (3) for each $(U_j)_{j=1}^n \subset \mathcal{T}$,

$$\bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j \in \mathcal{T}$$

Exercise 4.1.2. Let X be a set and $(\mathcal{T}_i)_{i \in I}$ a collection of topologies on X . Then $\bigcap_{i \in I} \mathcal{T}_i$ is a topology on X .

Proof.

- (1) Since for each $i \in I$, $X, \emptyset \in \mathcal{T}_i$, we have that $X, \emptyset \in \bigcap_{i \in I} \mathcal{T}_i$.
- (2) Let $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \bigcap_{i \in I} \mathcal{T}_i$. Then for each $i \in I$, $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{T}_i$. So for each $i \in I$, $\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}_i$. Thus $\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \bigcap_{i \in I} \mathcal{T}_i$.
- (3) Let $(U_j)_{j=1}^n \subset \bigcap_{i \in I} \mathcal{T}_i$. Then for each $i \in I$, $(U_j)_{j=1}^n \subset \mathcal{T}_i$. So for each $i \in I$, $\bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j \in \mathcal{T}_i$. Thus $\bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j \in \bigcap_{i \in I} \mathcal{T}_i$.

So $\bigcap_{i \in I} \mathcal{T}_i$ is a topology on X . □

Definition 4.1.3. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$. Set

$$\mathcal{S} = \{\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X) : \mathcal{T} \text{ is a topology on } X \text{ and } \mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{T}\}$$

We define the **topology generated by \mathcal{E}** on X , denoted $\tau(\mathcal{E})$, by

$$\tau(\mathcal{E}) = \bigcap_{\mathcal{T} \in \mathcal{S}} \mathcal{T}$$

Definition 4.1.4. Let (X, d) be a metric space. We define the **metric topology on X** , denoted \mathcal{T}_d , by

$$\mathcal{T}_d = \tau(\{B(x, \delta) : x \in X, \delta > 0\})$$

Definition 4.1.5. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ a topology on X , $x \in X$ and $\mathcal{B}_x \subset \mathcal{T}$. Then \mathcal{B}_x is said to be a **neighborhood base for \mathcal{T} at x** if

- (1) for each $V \in \mathcal{B}_x$, $x \in V$
- (2) for each $U \in \mathcal{T}$, if $x \in U$, then there exists $V \in \mathcal{B}_x$ such that $V \subset U$

Exercise 4.1.6. Let (X, d) be a metric space and $x \in X$. Set $\mathcal{B}_x = \{B(x, \delta) : \delta > 0\}$. Then \mathcal{B}_x is a neighborhood base for \mathcal{T}_d at x .

FINISH!!! right now not well defined.

Proof. Clear. □

Definition 4.1.7. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ a topology on X and $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{T}$. Then \mathcal{B} is said to be a **base for \mathcal{T}** if for each $x \in X$, there exists $\mathcal{B}_x \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that \mathcal{B}_x is a neighborhood base for \mathcal{T} at x . **FINISH!!! Needs fixing, this definition is non standard.**

Exercise 4.1.8. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ a topology on X and $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{T}$. Then \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T} iff for each $U \in \mathcal{T}$, $U \neq \emptyset$ implies that there exists a collection $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that

$$U = \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha$$

Proof. Suppose that \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T} . Let $U \in \mathcal{T}$. Since \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T} , for each $x \in U$, there exists $\mathcal{B}_x \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that \mathcal{B}_x is a neighborhood base for \mathcal{T} at x . This implies that for each $x \in U$, there exists $V_x \in \mathcal{B}_x$ such that $x \in V_x \subset U$. Suppose that $U \neq \emptyset$. Then $(V_x)_{x \in U} \subset \mathcal{B}$ satisfies $U = \bigcup_{x \in U} V_x$.

Conversely, suppose that for each $U \in \mathcal{T}$, $U \neq \emptyset$ implies that there exists a collection $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that $U = \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha$. Let $x \in X$. Set $\mathcal{B}_x = \{V \in \mathcal{B} : x \in V\}$. Let $U \in \mathcal{T}$.

Suppose that $x \in U$. Then $U \neq \emptyset$. By assumption, there exists a collection $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that $U = \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha$. Since $x \in U$, there exists $\alpha^* \in A$ such that $x \in U_{\alpha^*}$. By definition, $U_{\alpha^*} \in \mathcal{B}_x$ and $U_{\alpha^*} \subset U$. Hence \mathcal{B}_x is a neighborhood base for \mathcal{T} at x . Therefore for each $x \in X$, there exists $\mathcal{B}_x \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that \mathcal{B}_x is a neighborhood base for \mathcal{T} at x . Thus \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T} . □

Exercise 4.1.9. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2 \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ topologies on X and $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{T}_1$. Suppose that $\mathcal{T}_1 \subset \mathcal{T}_2$. If \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T}_2 , then \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T}_1 .

Proof. Suppose that \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T}_2 . Let $U \in \mathcal{T}_1$. Then $U \in \mathcal{T}_2$. Suppose that $U \neq \emptyset$. Since \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T}_2 , the previous exercise implies that there exists a collection $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that $U = \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha$. Thus the previous exercise implies that \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T}_1 . □

Exercise 4.1.10. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$. Then there exists a topology \mathcal{T} on X such that \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T} iff

- (1) for each $x \in X$, there exists $V \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in V$
- (2) for each $U, V \in \mathcal{B}$, if $x \in U \cap V$, then there exists $W \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in W \subset U \cap V$

Proof. Suppose that there exists a topology \mathcal{T} on X such that \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T} . Then conditions (1) and (2) are clear by Definition 4.1.5 and Definition 4.1.7.

Conversely, suppose that (1) and (2) are satisfied. Define $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ by

$$\mathcal{T} = \{U \subset X : \text{for each } x \in U, \text{ there exists } V \in \mathcal{B} \text{ such that } x \in V \subset U\}$$

Trivially $\emptyset \in \mathcal{T}$. By condition (1), $X \in \mathcal{T}$. Let $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{T}$ and $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha$. Then there exists $\alpha \in A$ such that $x \in U_\alpha$. Hence there exists $V \subset \mathcal{B}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} x &\in V \\ &\subset U_\alpha \\ &\subset \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \end{aligned}$$

So $\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in \mathcal{T}$. Let $(U_j)_{j=1}^n \subset \mathcal{T}$ and $x \in \bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j$. Then in particular, $U_1, U_2 \in \mathcal{T}$ and $x \in U_1 \cap U_2$. Then for $j \in \{1, 2\}$, there exists $V_j \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in V_j \subset U_j$. This implies that $x \in V_1 \cap V_2$ and by condition (2), there exists $W \in \mathcal{B}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} x &\in W \\ &\subset V_1 \cap V_2 \\ &\subset U_1 \cap U_2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $U_1 \cap U_2 \in \mathcal{T}$. Proceeding inductively, we obtain that $\bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j \in \mathcal{T}$. \square

Exercise 4.1.11. Let X be a set and $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$. Define $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{P}(X)$ by

$$\mathcal{B} = \{X, \emptyset\} \cup \left\{ \bigcap_{j=1}^n V_j : (V_j)_{j=1}^n \subset \mathcal{E} \right\}$$

Then

- \mathcal{B} is a base for $\tau(\mathcal{E})$
-

$$\tau(\mathcal{E}) = \left\{ \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} V_\alpha : (V_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{B} \right\}$$

That is, each element of $\tau(\mathcal{E})$ is either X, \emptyset or a union of finite intersections of elements of \mathcal{E} .

Proof.

- Referring to Exercise 4.1.10, since $X \in \mathcal{B}$, condition (1) is satisfied and since for each $U, V \in \mathcal{B}$, $U \cap V \in \mathcal{B}$, condition (2) is satisfied. Hence there exists a topology \mathcal{T} on X such that \mathcal{B} is a base for \mathcal{T} . Since $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{T}$, we have that $\tau(\mathcal{E}) = \tau(\mathcal{B}) \subset \mathcal{T}$. Then Exercise 4.1.9 implies that \mathcal{B} is a base for $\tau(\mathcal{E})$.
- Exercise 4.1.8 implies that

$$\tau(\mathcal{E}) = \left\{ \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} V_\alpha : (V_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \mathcal{B} \right\}$$

\square

Definition 4.1.12. Let X be a set and \mathcal{T} a topology on X . Then (X, \mathcal{T}) is said to be a **topological space**. Let $U \subset X$. Then U is said to be **open** if $U \in \mathcal{T}$ and U is said to be **closed** if U^c is open. We define $\mathcal{F}_T = \{C \subset X : C^c \in \mathcal{T}\}$.

Definition 4.1.13. Let X be a topological space and $S, N \subset X$. Then N is said to be a **neighborhood** of S if there exists $U \subset X$ such that U is open and $S \subset U \subset N$. For $S \in X$, we denote the set of neighborhoods of S by \mathcal{N}_S .

Definition 4.1.14. Let X be a topological space and $A \subset X$. Set $\mathcal{U}_A = \{U \subset X : U \subset A \text{ and } U \text{ is open}\}$ and $\mathcal{C}_A = \{U \subset X : A \subset U \text{ and } U \text{ is closed}\}$.

We define the **interior of A**, denoted A° , by

$$A^\circ = \bigcup_{U \in \mathcal{U}_A} U$$

We define the **closure of A** , denoted \overline{A} , by

$$\overline{A} = \bigcap_{U \in \mathcal{C}_A} U$$

Definition 4.1.15. Let X be a topological space and $A \subset X$. Then

- (1) A is open iff $A = A^\circ$
- (2) A is closed iff $A = \overline{A}$

Proof. Clear. □

Exercise 4.1.16. Let X be a topological space and $A \subset X$. Then $(A^\circ)^c = \overline{A^c}$.

Proof. □

Exercise 4.1.17. Let X be a topological space, $A \subset X$ and $x \in X$. Then $A \in \mathcal{N}_x$ iff $x \in A^\circ$.

Proof. Suppose that $A \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Then there exists $U \subset X$ such that U is open and $x \in U \subset A$. By definition, $U \subset A^\circ$. Conversely, suppose that $x \in A^\circ$. Then by definition, $A^\circ \in \mathcal{N}_x$. □

Exercise 4.1.18. Let X be a topological space and $A \subset X$. Then A is open iff for each $x \in A$, there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$ such that U is open and $U \subset A$.

Proof. Suppose that A is open. Let $x \in A$. Then $A \in \mathcal{N}_x$, A is open and $A \subset A$. Conversely, suppose that for each $x \in A$, there exists $U_x \in \mathcal{N}_x$ such that U_x is open and $U_x \subset A$. Then

$$A = \bigcup_{x \in A} U_x$$

is open. □

Definition 4.1.19. Let X be a topological space, $A \subset X$ and $x \in X$. Then x is said to be a **limit point of A** if for each $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$,

$$A \cap (U \setminus \{x\}) \neq \emptyset$$

We define $A' = \{x \in A : x \text{ is a limit point of } A\}$.

Exercise 4.1.20. Let X be a topological space and $A \subset X$. Then $\overline{A} = A \cup A'$.

Proof. Let $x \in A'$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that $x \notin \overline{A}$. Then there exists $C \subset X$ such that C is closed, $A \subset C$ and $x \notin C$. Hence $x \in C^c \subset A^c$. Since C^c is open, $x \in (A^c)^\circ$. Since $x \in A'$ and $(A^c)^\circ \in \mathcal{N}_x$, $[(A^c)^\circ \setminus \{x\}] \cap A \neq \emptyset$. This is a contradiction since $(A^c)^\circ \setminus \{x\} \subset A^c$. So $x \notin \overline{A}$ and $A' \subset \overline{A}$. Since $A \subset \overline{A}$, we have that $A \cup A' \subset \overline{A}$.

Conversely, let $x \in \overline{A}$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that $x \notin A \cup A'$. Then $x \in A^c \cap (A')^c$. Since $x \in (A')^c$, there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$ such that $(U \setminus \{x\}) \cap A = \emptyset$. Hence $U \setminus \{x\} \subset A^c$. Since $x \in A^c$,

$$\begin{aligned} x &\in U^\circ \\ &\subset U \\ &= (U \setminus \{x\}) \cup \{x\} \\ &\subset A^c \end{aligned}$$

Since $A \subset (U^\circ)^c$ which is closed, $x \in \overline{A}$ implies that $x \in (U^\circ)^c$ which is a contradiction. So $x \in A \cup A'$ and $\overline{A} \subset A \cup A'$. Therefore $\overline{A} = A \cup A'$. □

4.2. Continuous Maps.

Definition 4.2.1. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then f is said to be **continuous** if for each $B \in \mathcal{B}$, $f^{-1}(B) \in \mathcal{A}$.

Definition 4.2.2. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $x \in X$. Then f is said to be **continuous at x** if for each $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$, there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$ such that $f(U) \subset V$.

Exercise 4.2.3. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $x \in X$. Then f is continuous at x iff for each $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$, $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{N}_x$.

Hint: for $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$ and $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$, consider $f^{-1}(f(U))$ and $f(f^{-1}(V))$

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous at x . Let $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$. Then there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$ such that $f(U) \subset V$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} x &\in U^\circ \\ &\subset U \\ &\subset f^{-1}(f(U)) \\ &\subset f^{-1}(V) \end{aligned}$$

So $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{N}_x$.

Conversely, suppose that for each $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$, $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Let $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$. Hence $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Set $U = f^{-1}(V)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(U) &= f(f^{-1}(V)) \\ &\subset V \end{aligned}$$

Thus f is continuous at x . □

Exercise 4.2.4. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then f is continuous iff for each $x \in X$, f is continuous at x .

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous. Let $x \in X$. Let $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$. Then $V^\circ \in \mathcal{B}$ and $f(x) \in V^\circ$. Set $U = f^{-1}(V^\circ)$. By continuity, $U \in \mathcal{A}$ and by construction, $x \in U$. Hence $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(U) &= f(f^{-1}(V^\circ)) \\ &\subset V^\circ \\ &\subset V \end{aligned}$$

So f is continuous at x .

Conversely, suppose that for each $x \in X$, f is continuous at x . Let $B \in \mathcal{B}$. Let $x \in f^{-1}(B)$. Then $B \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$. Continuity at x implies that $f^{-1}(B) \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Then $x \in (f^{-1}(B))^\circ$. Since $x \in f^{-1}(B)$ is arbitrary, $f^{-1}(B) \subset (f^{-1}(B))^\circ$. Hence $f^{-1}(B) = (f^{-1}(B))^\circ$ which implies that $f^{-1}(B) \in \mathcal{A}$. So f is continuous. □

Definition 4.2.5. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. We define the

(1) **push-forward of \mathcal{A}** , denoted $f_*\mathcal{A}$, by

$$f_*\mathcal{A} = \{B \subset Y : f^{-1}(B) \in \mathcal{A}\}$$

(2) **pull-back of \mathcal{B}** , denoted $f^*\mathcal{B}$, by

$$f^*\mathcal{B} = \{f^{-1}(B) : B \in \mathcal{B}\}$$

Exercise 4.2.6. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then

- (1) $f_*\mathcal{A}$ is a topology on Y
- (2) $f^*\mathcal{B}$ is a topology on X

Proof.

- (1) • Since $f^{-1}(Y) = X \in \mathcal{A}$ and $f^{-1}(\emptyset) = \emptyset \in \mathcal{A}$, $Y, \emptyset \in f_*\mathcal{A}$.
- Let $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset f_*\mathcal{A}$. Then for each $\alpha \in A$, $f^{-1}(U_\alpha) \in \mathcal{A}$. This implies that

$$f^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha\right) = \bigcup_{\alpha \in A} f^{-1}(U_\alpha) \in \mathcal{A}$$

Hence $\bigcup_{\alpha \in A} U_\alpha \in f_*\mathcal{A}$.

- Let $(U_j)_{j=1}^n \subset f_*\mathcal{A}$. Then for each $j \in 1, \dots, n$, $f^{-1}(U_j) \in \mathcal{A}$. This implies that

$$f^{-1}\left(\bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j\right) = \bigcap_{j=1}^n f^{-1}(U_j) \in \mathcal{A}$$

Hence $\bigcap_{j=1}^n U_j \in f_*\mathcal{A}$.

So $f_*\mathcal{A}$ is a topology on Y .

- (2) Similar to (1).

□

Exercise 4.2.7. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{P}(Y)$. Suppose that $\mathcal{B} = \tau(\mathcal{E})$. Then f is continuous iff for each $B \in \mathcal{E}$, $f^{-1}(B) \in \mathcal{A}$.

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous. Since $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{B}$, clearly for each $B \in \mathcal{E}$, $f^{-1}(B) \in \mathcal{A}$. Conversely, suppose that for each $B \in \mathcal{E}$, $f^{-1}(B) \in \mathcal{A}$. Then $\mathcal{E} \subset f_*\mathcal{A}$. Since $f_*\mathcal{A}$ is a topology on Y , we have that $\mathcal{B} = \tau(\mathcal{E}) \subset f_*\mathcal{A}$. So f is continuous. □

Definition 4.2.8. Let X be a set, $(Y_\alpha, \mathcal{B}_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ a collection of topological spaces and $\mathcal{F} \in \prod_{\alpha \in A} Y_\alpha^X$ (i.e. $\mathcal{F} = (f_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ where for each $\alpha \in A$, $f_\alpha : X \rightarrow Y_\alpha$). We define the **initial topology generated by \mathcal{F}** on X , denoted $\tau_X(\mathcal{F})$, by

$$\tau_X(\mathcal{F}) = \{f_\alpha^{-1}(B) : B \in \mathcal{B}_\alpha \text{ and } \alpha \in A\}$$

Note 4.2.9. The initial topology topology generated by \mathcal{F} is also called the **weak topology generated by \mathcal{F}** and if $\mathcal{F} = \{f\}$, then $\tau_X(\mathcal{F}) = f^*\mathcal{B}$.

Note 4.2.10. Essentially, $\tau_X(\mathcal{F})$ is the smallest topology on X such that for each $\alpha \in A$, $f_\alpha : X \rightarrow Y_\alpha$ is continuous.

Exercise 4.2.11. Let X be a set, $(Y_\alpha, \mathcal{B}_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ a collection of topological spaces and $\mathcal{F} = (f_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \in \prod_{\alpha \in A} Y_\alpha^X$. Then $\tau_X(\mathcal{F})$ is a topology on X .

Proof. Clear. □

Definition 4.2.12. Let $(X_\alpha, \mathcal{A}_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ be a collection of topological spaces, Y a set and $\mathcal{F} \in \prod_{\alpha \in A} Y^{X_\alpha}$ (i.e. $\mathcal{F} = (f_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ where for each $\alpha \in A$, $f_\alpha : X_\alpha \rightarrow Y$). We define the **final topology generated by \mathcal{F}** on X , denoted $\tau_Y(\mathcal{F})$, by

$$\tau_Y(\mathcal{F}) = \{V \subset Y : \text{for each } \alpha \in A, f_\alpha^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{A}_\alpha\}$$

Note 4.2.13. If $\mathcal{F} = \{f\}$, then $\tau_Y(\mathcal{F}) = f_*\mathcal{A}$.

Note 4.2.14. Essentially, $\tau_X(\mathcal{F})$ is the largest topology on X such that for each $\alpha \in A$, $f_\alpha : X_\alpha \rightarrow Y$ is continuous.

Exercise 4.2.15. Let $(X_\alpha, \mathcal{A}_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ be a collection of topological spaces, Y a set and $\mathcal{F} = (f_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \in \prod_{\alpha \in A} Y^{X_\alpha}$. Then $\tau_X(\mathcal{F})$ is a topology on X .

Proof. Clear. □

Exercise 4.2.16. Let $(X_\alpha, \mathcal{A}_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ be a collection of topological spaces, Y a set, (Z, \mathcal{C}) a topological space, $\mathcal{F} = (f_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \in \prod_{\alpha \in A} Y^{X_\alpha}$ and $g : Y \rightarrow Z$. Then g is $\tau_Y(\mathcal{F})$ - \mathcal{C} continuous iff for each $\alpha \in A$, $g \circ f_\alpha$ is X_α - \mathcal{C} continuous, i.e. for each $\alpha \in A$, the following diagram commutes in the category of topological spaces:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_\alpha & \xrightarrow{f_\alpha} & Y \\ & \searrow g \circ f_\alpha & \downarrow g \\ & & Z \end{array}$$

Proof. If g is $\tau_Y(\mathcal{F})$ - \mathcal{C} continuous, then clearly for each $\alpha \in A$, $g \circ f_\alpha$ is X_α - \mathcal{C} continuous. Conversely, suppose that for each $\alpha \in A$, $g \circ f_\alpha$ is X_α - \mathcal{C} continuous. Let $V \in \mathcal{C}$. Continuity implies that for each $\alpha \in A$, $f_\alpha^{-1}(g^{-1}(V)) \in \mathcal{A}_\alpha$. By definition, $g^{-1}(V) \in \tau_Y(\mathcal{F})$. So g is $\tau_Y(\mathcal{F})$ - \mathcal{C} continuous. □

Definition 4.2.17. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then

- (1) f is said to be **open** if for each $A \in \mathcal{A}$, $f(A) \in \mathcal{B}$.
- (2) f is said to be **closed** if for each $A \subset X$, if $A^c \in \mathcal{A}$, then $f(A)^c \in \mathcal{B}$.

Exercise 4.2.18. Doob-Dynkin Lemma:

Let (X_1, \mathcal{T}_1) , (X_2, \mathcal{T}_2) and (X_3, \mathcal{T}_3) be topological spaces and $f : X_1 \rightarrow X_2$ and $g : X_1 \rightarrow X_3$. Suppose that f is surjective and \mathcal{T}_1 - \mathcal{T}_2 continuous and g is \mathcal{T}_1 - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous and (X_3, \mathcal{T}_3) is a T_1 space. Then g is $f^*\mathcal{T}_2$ - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous iff there exists a unique $\phi : X_2 \rightarrow X_3$ such that ϕ is \mathcal{T}_2 - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous and $g = \phi \circ f$.

Hint: For each $t \in X_3$, set $A_t = g^{-1}(\{t\}) \in \mathcal{F}_{(f^*\mathcal{T}_2)}$ and choose $B_t \in \mathcal{T}_2$ such that $A_t = f^{-1}(B_t)$. Set $\phi(y) = t$ for $y \in B_t \cap f(X_1)$ and $t \in g(X_1)$.

Proof. Suppose that there exists a unique $\phi : X_2 \rightarrow X_3$ such that ϕ is \mathcal{T}_2 - \mathcal{T}_3 measurable and $g = \phi \circ f$. Since f is $f^*\mathcal{T}_2$ - \mathcal{T}_2 continuous, we have that $g = \phi \circ f$ is $f^*\mathcal{T}_2$ - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous. Conversely, suppose that g is $f^*\mathcal{T}_2$ - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous.

• **(Existence)**

For each $t \in X_3$, set $A_t = g^{-1}(\{t\})$. Since (X_3, \mathcal{T}_3) is a T_1 space, for each $t \in X_3$, $A_t \in \mathcal{F}_{f^*\mathcal{T}_2}$ and thus, there exists $B_t \in \mathcal{F}_{\mathcal{T}_2}$ such that $A_t = f^{-1}(B_t)$.

Note that

– for each $t \in g(X_1)$, there exists $x \in A_t$ such that $g(x) = t$. Hence $f(x) \in B_t$.

– for $t_1, t_2 \in g(X_1)$, $t_1 \neq t_2$ implies that

$$\begin{aligned} f^{-1}(B_{t_1} \cap B_{t_2}) &= A_{t_1} \cap A_{t_2} \\ &= g^{-1}(\{t_1\} \cap \{t_2\}) \\ &= \emptyset \end{aligned}$$

and since f is surjective,

$$\begin{aligned} B_{t_1} \cap B_{t_2} &= f(f^{-1}(B_{t_1} \cap B_{t_2})) \\ &= f(\emptyset) \\ &= \emptyset \end{aligned}$$

– we have that

$$\begin{aligned} f^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{t \in g(X_1)} B_t\right) &= \bigcup_{t \in g(X_1)} A_t \\ &= \bigcup_{t \in g(X_1)} g^{-1}(\{t\}) \\ &= g^{-1}(g(X_1)) \\ &= X_1 \end{aligned}$$

Since f is surjective, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} X_2 &= f(X_1) \\ &= f\left(f^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{t \in g(X_1)} B_t\right)\right) \\ &= \bigcup_{t \in g(X_1)} B_t \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

- for each $t \in g(X_1)$, $B_t \neq \emptyset$
- $(A_t)_{t \in g(X_1)}$ is a partition of X_1
- $(B_t)_{t \in g(X_1)}$ is a partition of X_2

Define $\phi : X_2 \rightarrow X_3$ by $\phi(y) = t$ for $t \in g(X_1)$ and $y \in B_t$. Then the previous observations imply that ϕ is well defined and $\phi(X_2) = g(X_1)$. Since for each $t \in g(X_1)$ and $x \in A_t$, $f(x) \in B_t$ and $g(x) = t$, we have that $\phi \circ f(x) = t = g(x)$. So $\phi \circ f = g$.

To show that ϕ is continuous, let $C \in \mathcal{T}_3$. Choose $B \in \mathcal{T}_2$ such that $g^{-1}(C) = f^{-1}(B)$. Let $y \in \phi^{-1}(C) \subset X_2$. Set $t = \phi(y) \in C$ and choose $x \in X_1$ such that $y = f(x)$.

Since

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= \phi \circ f(x) \\ &= \phi(y) \\ &= t \\ &\in C \end{aligned}$$

$x \in g^{-1}(C) = f^{-1}(B)$. Therefore, $y = f(x) \in B$. So $\phi^{-1}(C) \subset B$.

Let $y \in B$. Choose $x \in X_1$ such that $f(x) = y$. Then $x \in f^{-1}(B) = g^{-1}(C)$. So

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(y) &= \phi \circ f(x) \\ &= g(x) \\ &\in C \end{aligned}$$

and $y \in \phi^{-1}(C)$. So $B \subset \phi^{-1}(C)$. Hence $\phi^{-1}(C) = B \in \mathcal{T}_2$ and ϕ is \mathcal{T}_2 - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous.

• **(Uniqueness)**

Let $\psi : X_2 \rightarrow X_3$. Suppose that ψ is \mathcal{T}_2 - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous and $g = \psi \circ f$. Let $y \in X_2$. Then there exists $x \in X_1$ such that $y = f(x)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(y) &= \psi \circ f(x) \\ &= g(x) \\ &= \phi \circ f(x) \\ &= \phi(y) \end{aligned}$$

So $\psi = \phi$.

□

Exercise 4.2.19. Let (X_1, \mathcal{T}_1) , (X_2, \mathcal{T}_2) and (X_3, \mathcal{T}_3) be topological spaces and $f : X_1 \rightarrow X_2$ and $g : X_1 \rightarrow X_3$. Suppose that f is \mathcal{T}_1 - \mathcal{T}_2 continuous and g is \mathcal{T}_1 - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous and (X_3, \mathcal{T}_3) is a T_1 space. Then g is $f^*\mathcal{T}_2$ - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous iff there exists a unique $\phi : f(X_1) \rightarrow X_3$ such that ϕ is $\mathcal{T}_2 \cap f(X_1)$ - \mathcal{T}_3 continuous and $g = \phi \circ f$.

Proof. A previous exercise implies that $f : X_1 \rightarrow f(X_1)$ is \mathcal{T}_1 - $\mathcal{T}_2 \cap f(X_1)$ continuous. Now apply the previous exercise. □

4.3. Nets.

Definition 4.3.1. Let A be a set and \leq a relation on A . Then (A, \leq) is said to be a **directed set** if ,

- (1) for each $\alpha \in A$, $\alpha \leq \alpha$
- (2) for each $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in A$, $\alpha \leq \beta$ and $\beta \leq \gamma$ implies that $\alpha \leq \gamma$
- (3) for each $\alpha, \beta \in A$, there exists $\gamma \in A$ such that $\alpha, \beta \leq \gamma$

Definition 4.3.2. Let X be a topological space and $x \in X$. Define the **reverse inclusion ordering** on \mathcal{N}_x , denoted \leq , by $U \leq V$ iff $V \subset U$.

Exercise 4.3.3. Let X be a topological space and $x \in X$. Then \mathcal{N}_x with orderd by reverse inclusion is a directed set.

Proof.

- (1) Clearly, for each $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$, $U \leq U$.
- (2) Let $U, V, W \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Suppose that $U \leq V$ and $V \leq W$. Then $W \subset V \subset U$ which implies that $W \subset U$ and hence $U \leq W$.
- (3) Let $U, V \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Set $W = U \cap V$. Then $W \in \mathcal{N}_x$ and $U, V \leq W$.

So \mathcal{N}_x is a directed set. □

Definition 4.3.4. Let X be a topological space, A a directed set and $x : A \rightarrow Y$. Then x is said to be a **net** in X . We typically write $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$.

Definition 4.3.5. Let X be a topological space, $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset X$ a net and $U \subset X$. Then $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ is said to be

- **in U eventually** if there exists $\beta \in A$ such that for each $\alpha \in A$ $\alpha \geq \beta$ implies that $x_\alpha \in U$
- **in U infinitely often** if for each $\alpha \in A$, there exists $\beta \in A$ such that $\beta \geq \alpha$ and $x_\beta \in U$

Definition 4.3.6. Let X be a topological space, $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset X$ a net and $x \in X$. Then $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ is said to **converge to x** , denoted $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$, if for each $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$, $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ is eventually in U .

Definition 4.3.7. Let X be a topological space and $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset X$ a net. Then $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ is said to **converge** if there exists $x \in X$ such that $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$.

Exercise 4.3.8. Let X be a topological space, $S \subset X$ and $x \in X$. Then $x \in S'$ iff there exists a net $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset S \setminus \{x\}$ such that $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$.

Proof. Suppose that $x \in S'$. Set $A = \mathcal{N}_x$, ordered by reverse inclusion. Since $x \in S'$, for each $\alpha \in A$, there exists $x_\alpha \in (\alpha \setminus \{x\}) \cap S$. Then $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset S \setminus \{x\}$. Let $V \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Choose $\beta = V$. Let $\alpha \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Suppose that $\alpha \geq \beta$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x_\alpha &\in (\alpha \setminus \{x\}) \cap S \\ &\subset \alpha \\ &\subset \beta \\ &= V \end{aligned}$$

So $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathcal{N}_x}$ is eventually in V . Since $V \in \mathcal{N}_x$ is arbitrary, $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$.

Conversely, suppose that there exists a net $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset S \setminus \{x\}$ such that $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$. Let $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$.

Since $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ is eventually in U , there exists $\beta \in A$ such that $x_\beta \in U$. Then $x_\beta \in (U \setminus \{x\}) \cap S$ and $(U \setminus \{x\}) \cap S \neq \emptyset$. Since $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$ is arbitrary, $x \in S'$. \square

Exercise 4.3.9. Let X be a topological space, $S \subset X$ and $x \in X$. Then $x \in \bar{S}$ iff there exists a net $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset S$ such that $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$.

Proof. Suppose that $x \in \bar{S}$. Since $\bar{S} = S \cup S'$, $x \in S$ or $x \in S'$. If $x \in S$, define $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset S$ by $x_n = x$. Then $x_n \rightarrow x$. If $x \in S'$, the previous exercise implies that there exists a net $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset S \setminus \{x\} \subset S$ such that $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$. \square

Exercise 4.3.10. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) and (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $x \in X$. Then f is continuous at x iff for each net $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset X$, $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$ implies that $f(x_\alpha) \rightarrow f(x)$.

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous at x . Let $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset X$ be a net. Suppose that $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$. Let $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$. Continuity implies that $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Since $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$, $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ is eventually in $f^{-1}(V)$. So there exists $\beta \in A$ such that for each $\alpha \in A$, $\alpha \geq \beta$ implies that $x_\alpha \in f^{-1}(V)$. Let $\alpha \in A$. Suppose that $\alpha \geq \beta$. Then $f(x_\alpha) \in V$. So $(f(x_\alpha))_{\alpha \in A}$ is eventually in V . Since $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$ is arbitrary, $f(x_\alpha) \rightarrow f(x)$.

Conversely, suppose that f is not continuous at x . Then there exists $V \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$ such that $f^{-1}(V) \notin \mathcal{N}_x$. Then $x \notin (f^{-1}(V))^\circ$. So $x \in ((f^{-1}(V))^\circ)^c = \overline{f^{-1}(V^c)}$. This implies that there exists a net $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset f^{-1}(V^c)$ such that $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$. Since for each $\alpha \in A$, $f(x_\alpha) \in V^c$, $f(x_\alpha)$ is not eventually in V . So $f(x_\alpha) \not\rightarrow f(x)$. \square

Exercise 4.3.11. Let $(Y_\alpha, \mathcal{B}_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ be a collection of topological spaces and $\mathcal{F} \in \prod_{\alpha \in A} Y_\alpha^X$ with $\mathcal{F} = (f_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ and X a set. Equip X with $\tau(\mathcal{F})$. Let $(x_\gamma)_{\gamma \in \Gamma} \subset X$ be a net and $x \in X$. Then $x_\gamma \rightarrow x$ iff for each $\alpha \in A$, $f_\alpha(x_\gamma) \rightarrow f_\alpha(x)$.

Proof. Suppose that $x_\gamma \rightarrow x$. Let $\alpha \in A$. Since f_α is continuous, the previous exercise implies that $f_\alpha(x_\gamma) \rightarrow f_\alpha(x)$.

Conversely, Suppose that for each $\alpha \in A$, $f_\alpha(x_\gamma) \rightarrow f_\alpha(x)$. Let $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$. Since $U^\circ \in \tau(\mathcal{F})$, Exercise 4.1.11 implies there exist $V_1 \in B_{\alpha_1}, \dots, V_n \in B_{\alpha_n}$ such that $\bigcap_{j=1}^n f_{\alpha_j}^{-1}(V_j) \subset U^\circ$ and

$x \in \bigcap_{j=1}^n f_{\alpha_j}^{-1}(V_j)$. Let $j \in \{1, \dots, n\}$. Since $f_{\alpha_j}^{-1}(V_j) \in \mathcal{N}_x$, $V_j \in \mathcal{N}_{f(x)}$. By assumption, $f_{\alpha_j}(x_\gamma)$ is eventually in V_j . Thus there exist $\gamma'_j \in \Gamma$ such that for each $\gamma \geq \gamma'_j$, $f_{\alpha_j}(x_\gamma) \in V_j$, or equivalently, $x_\gamma \in f_{\alpha_j}^{-1}(V_j)$. Since Γ is directed, there exists $\gamma' \in \Gamma$ such that for each $j \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, $\gamma' \geq \gamma'_j$. Let $\gamma \in \Gamma$. Suppose that $\gamma \geq \gamma'$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x_\gamma &\in \bigcap_{j=1}^n f_{\alpha_j}^{-1}(V_j) \\ &\subset U^\circ \\ &\subset U \end{aligned}$$

So $(x_\gamma)_{\gamma \in \Gamma}$ is eventually in U . Since $U \in \mathcal{N}_x$ is arbitrary, $x_\gamma \rightarrow x$. \square

Exercise 4.3.12.

Exercise 4.3.13. Let X, Y be topological spaces and $\phi : X \rightarrow Y$ a homeomorphism. Then for each $E \subset X$,

- (1) $\overline{\phi(E)} = \phi(\overline{E})$
- (2) $\phi(E)^\circ = \phi(E^\circ)$

Proof.

- (1) Let $E \subset X$. Since $E \subset \overline{E}$, we have that $\phi(E) \subset \phi(\overline{E})$. Since \overline{E} is closed, $\phi(\overline{E})$ is closed and thus $\overline{\phi(E)} \subset \phi(\overline{E})$. Conversely, let $x \in \phi(\overline{E})$. Then $\phi^{-1}(x) \in \overline{E}$. Then there exists a net $(y_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset E$ such that $y_\alpha \rightarrow \phi^{-1}(x)$. Then $(\phi(y_\alpha))_{\alpha \in A} \subset \phi(E)$ and $\phi(y_\alpha) \rightarrow x$. Thus $x \in \overline{\phi(E)}$ and $\phi(\overline{E}) \subset \overline{\phi(E)}$.
- (2) Similar

□

Definition 4.3.14.

Exercise 4.3.15.

4.4. Compactness.

Definition 4.4.1. Let X be a topological space and $E \subset X$. Then E is said to be **precompact** if \overline{E} is compact.

4.5. Product Topology.

Definition 4.5.1. Let $(X_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$ be a collection of topological spaces. We define the **product topology** on $\prod_{\alpha \in A} X_\alpha$ to be the initial (weak) topology generated by $(\pi_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A}$.

4.6. Quotient Topology.

Definition 4.6.1. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) , (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then f is said to be a **\mathcal{A} - \mathcal{B} quotient map** if

- (1) f is surjective
- (2) \mathcal{B} is the final topology on Y generated by f , i.e. for each $V \subset Y$, $V \in \mathcal{B}$ iff $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{A}$.

Note 4.6.2. We typically avoid specifying the topologies when they are clear from the context.

Exercise 4.6.3. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) , (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. If f is a quotient map, then f is continuous.

Proof. Suppose that f is a quotient map. Let $V \subset Y$. Suppose that V is open. By definition, $f^{-1}(V)$ is open. Hence f is continuous. \square

Exercise 4.6.4. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) , (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is continuous and surjective. Then f is a quotient map iff

for each $C \subset Y$, C is closed iff $f^{-1}(C)$ is closed

Proof.

- (\implies)

Suppose that f is a quotient map.

Let $C \subset Y$. If C is closed, then continuity implies that $f^{-1}(C)$ is closed.

Conversely, suppose that $f^{-1}(C)$ is closed. Then $f^{-1}(C^c) = (f^{-1}(C))^c$ is open. Since f is a quotient map, $f(f^{-1}(C^c))$ is open. Surjectivity implies that $f(f^{-1}(C^c)) = C^c$. So C is closed.

- (\impliedby)

Suppose that for each $C \subset Y$, C is closed iff $f^{-1}(C)$ is closed.

Let $V \subset Y$. If V is open. Continuity implies that $f^{-1}(V)$ is open.

Conversely, suppose that $f^{-1}(V)$ is open. Then $f^{-1}(V^c) = (f^{-1}(V))^c$ is closed. Therefore, $f(f^{-1}(V^c))$ is closed. Surjectivity implies that $V^c = f(f^{-1}(V^c))$. So V is open.

\square

Exercise 4.6.5. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) , (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is continuous and surjective. If f is open or closed, then f is a quotient map.

Proof.

- Suppose that f is open. Let $V \subset Y$.

Suppose that V is open. Then continuity implies that $f^{-1}(V)$ is open. Conversely, suppose that $f^{-1}(V)$ is open. Since f is open $f(f^{-1}(V))$ is open. Surjectivity implies that $V = f(f^{-1}(V))$. So V is open. By definition, f is a quotient map.

- Suppose that f is closed. Then similarly to above, f is a quotient map.

\square

Exercise 4.6.6. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) , (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is a quotient map. Then f is open iff

for each $U \subset X$, U is open implies that $f^{-1}(f(U))$ is open

Proof.

• (\implies)

Suppose that f is open.

Let $U \subset X$. Suppose that U is open. Since f is open, $f(U)$ is open. Continuity implies that $f^{-1}(f(U))$ is open.

• (\impliedby)

Suppose that for each $U \subset X$, U is open implies that $f^{-1}(f(U))$ is open.

Since f is a quotient map, $f(U)$ is open. So f is open.

□

Exercise 4.6.7. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) , (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces, and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is surjective and continuous. If f is open or closed, then f is a quotient map.

Proof. By continuity, $\mathcal{B} \subset f_*\mathcal{A}$.

- Suppose that f is open. Let $V \in f_*\mathcal{A}$. By definition, $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{A}$. Since f is open, $f(f^{-1}(V)) \in \mathcal{B}$. Surjectivity implies that $V = f(f^{-1}(V))$. So $f_*\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{B}$ and f is a \mathcal{A} - \mathcal{B} quotient map.
- The case is similar if f is closed.

□

Definition 4.6.8. Let (X, \mathcal{T}) be a topological space, Y a set and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is surjective. We call $f_*\mathcal{T}$ the **quotient topology** on Y .

Exercise 4.6.9. Let (X, \mathcal{T}) be a topological space, Y a set and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is surjective. Then $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is a \mathcal{T} - $f_*\mathcal{T}$ quotient map.

Proof. Clear.

□

Exercise 4.6.10. Let (X, \mathcal{T}) be a topological space, \sim an equivalence relation on X and $\pi : X \rightarrow X/\sim$ the projection map given by $x \mapsto \bar{x}$. Then π is a \mathcal{T} - $\pi_*\mathcal{T}$ quotient map.

Proof. Since π is surjective, the previous exercise implies that π is a \mathcal{T} - $\pi_*\mathcal{T}$ quotient map. □

Definition 4.6.11. Let X, Y be sets, \sim an equivalence relation on X and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Then f is said to be **\sim -invariant** if for each $a, b \in X$, $\bar{a} = \bar{b}$ implies that $f(a) = f(b)$.

Definition 4.6.12. Let X, Y be sets, \sim an equivalence relation on X and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is \sim -invariant

Exercise 4.6.13. Let (X, \mathcal{A}) , (Y, \mathcal{B}) be topological spaces, \sim an equivalence relation on X , $\pi : X \rightarrow X/\sim$ the projection map and $f : X \rightarrow Y$ continuous. If f is \sim -invariant, then there exists a unique $\bar{f} : X/\sim \rightarrow Y$ such that

- (1) $\bar{f} \circ \pi = f$
- (2) \bar{f} is \mathcal{A} - $\pi_*\mathcal{A}$ continuous

Proof. Suppose that f is \sim -invariant. Define $\bar{f} : X/\sim \rightarrow Y$ by $\bar{f}(\bar{x}) = f(x)$. By assumption, for each $a, b \in X$, $\bar{a} = \bar{b}$ implies that $f(a) = f(b)$. Thus \bar{f} is well defined. By construction, $f = \bar{f} \circ \pi$. Let $V \in \mathcal{B}$. Continuity of f implies that $f^{-1}(V) \in \mathcal{A}$. Since

$$\begin{aligned} f^{-1}(V) &= \pi^{-1}(\bar{f}^{-1}(V)) \\ &\in \mathcal{A} \end{aligned}$$

by definition of the quotient topology, $\bar{f}^{-1}(V) \in \pi_*\mathcal{A}$. So \bar{f} is \mathcal{A} - $\pi_*\mathcal{A}$ continuous.

□

4.7. Semi-continuity.

Definition 4.7.1. Let X be a topological space, $f : X \rightarrow (\infty, \infty]$ and $x_0 \in X$. Then f is said to be **lower semicontinuous (l.s.c.) at x_0** if

$$\liminf_{x \rightarrow x_0} f(x) \geq f(x_0)$$

and f is said to be **lower semicontinuous (l.s.c.)** if for each $x_0 \in X$, f is lower semicontinuous at x_0 .

Exercise 4.7.2. Let X be a topological space and $f : X \rightarrow (\infty, \infty]$. Then f is l.s.c. iff for each $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, $f^{-1}((\alpha, \infty])$ is open.

Proof. Suppose that f is l.s.c. Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x_0 \in f^{-1}((\alpha, \infty])$. Put $\epsilon = f(x_0) - \alpha$. By definition,

$$\sup_{V \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}} \inf_{x \in V \setminus \{x_0\}} f(x) \geq f(x_0)$$

Choose $V_\epsilon \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} \inf_{x \in V_\epsilon} f(x) &> f(x_0) - \epsilon \\ &= \alpha \end{aligned}$$

Then $V_\epsilon^\circ \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$ is open and

$$\begin{aligned} V_\epsilon^\circ &\subset V_\epsilon \\ &\subset f^{-1}((\alpha, \infty]) \end{aligned}$$

So $f^{-1}((\alpha, \infty])$ is open.

Conversely, suppose that for each $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, $f^{-1}((\alpha, \infty])$ is open. Let $x_0 \in X$. Put $\alpha = f(x_0)$. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, define $V_n = f^{-1}((f(x_0) - 1/n, \infty])$. Then for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $V_n \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$ and

$$\begin{aligned} \liminf_{x \rightarrow x_0} f(x) &= \sup_{V \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}} \inf_{x \in V \setminus \{x_0\}} f(x) \\ &\geq \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \inf_{x \in V_n \setminus \{x_0\}} f(x) \\ &\geq \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} f(x_0) - 1/n \\ &= f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

So f is l.s.c. □

5. BANACH SPACES

5.1. Introduction.

Note 5.1.1. In the following, we will consider vector spaces over \mathbb{C} . There are analogous results for real vector spaces as well, just replace every \mathbb{C} with \mathbb{R} .

Definition 5.1.2. Let X be a normed vector space. Then X is said to be a **Banach space** if X is complete.

Definition 5.1.3. Let X be a normed vector space and $(x_i)_{i=1}^n \subset X$. The series $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ is said to **converge** if the sequence $s_n := \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$ converges. The series $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ is said to **converge absolutely** if $\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|x_i\| < \infty$.

Exercise 5.1.4. Let X be a normed vector space. Then X is complete iff for each $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$, $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ converges absolutely implies that $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ converges.

Hint: Given a Cauchy sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, obtain a subsequence $(x_{n_j})_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \subset (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that for each $j \in \mathbb{N}$, $\|x_{n_{j+1}} - x_{n_j}\| < 2^{-j}$. Define a new sequence $(y_j)_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ by

$$y_j = \begin{cases} x_{n_1} & j = 1 \\ x_{n_j} - x_{n_{j-1}} & j \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

Proof. Suppose that X is complete. Let $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$. Suppose that $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ converges absolutely. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, if $m, n \geq N$ and $m < n$, then $\sum_{i=m+1}^n \|x_i\| < \epsilon$. Let $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$. Suppose that $m < n$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|s_n - s_m\| &= \left\| \sum_{i=1}^n x_i - \sum_{i=1}^m x_i \right\| \\ &= \left\| \sum_{i=m+1}^n x_i \right\| \\ &\leq \sum_{i=m+1}^n \|x_i\| \\ &< \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Thus $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy. Since X is complete, $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ converges. Conversely, Suppose that for each $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$, $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ converges absolutely implies that $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i$ converges. Let $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ be Cauchy. Proceed inductively to create a strictly increasing sequence $(n_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, if $m, n \geq n_i$, then $\|x_m - x_n\| < 2^{-i}$. Define $(y_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ by

$$y_i = \begin{cases} x_{n_1} & i = 1 \\ x_{n_i} - x_{n_{i-1}} & i \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

Then $\sum_{i=1}^k y_i = x_{n_k}$ and

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|y_i\| &= \|x_{n_1}\| + \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|x_{n_i} - x_{n_{i-1}}\| \\ &\leq \|x_{n_1}\| + 2 \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} 2^{-i} \\ &= \|x_{n_1}\| + 2 \end{aligned}$$

Hence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}} = (\sum_{i=1}^k y_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges. Since $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is cauchy and has a convergent subsequence, it converges. So X is complete. \square

Exercise 5.1.5. Let X be a normed vector space. Then addition and scalar multiplication are continuous on $X \times X$ and $\|\cdot\| : X \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is continuous.

Proof. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. Let $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \in X \times X$. Suppose that

$$\max\{\|x_1 - x_2\|, \|y_1 - y_2\|\} < \delta$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|(x_1 + y_1) - (x_2 + y_2)\| &= \|(x_1 - x_2) + (y_1 - y_2)\| \\ &\leq \|x_1 - x_2\| + \|y_1 - y_2\| \\ &< 2\delta \\ &= \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Hence addition is uniformly continuous.

Let $(\lambda_1, x_1) \in \mathbb{C} \times X$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \min\{\frac{\epsilon}{2(|\lambda_1| + \|x_1\| + 1)}, \frac{\sqrt{\epsilon}}{\sqrt{2}}\}$. Let $(\lambda_2, x_2) \in \mathbb{C} \times X$. Suppose that

$$\max\{|\lambda_1 - \lambda_2|, \|x_1 - x_2\|\} < \delta$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|\lambda_1 x_1 - \lambda_2 x_2\| &= \|\lambda_1 x_1 - \lambda_1 x_2 + \lambda_1 x_2 - \lambda_2 x_2\| \\ &= \|\lambda_1(x_1 - x_2) + (\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)x_2\| \\ &\leq |\lambda_1|\|x_1 - x_2\| + |\lambda_1 - \lambda_2|\|x_2\| \\ &\leq |\lambda_1|\|x_1 - x_2\| + |\lambda_1 - \lambda_2|(\|x_1 - x_2\| + \|x_1\|) \\ &< |\lambda_1|\delta + \delta(\delta + \|x_1\|) \\ &= (|\lambda_1| + \|x_1\|)\delta + \delta^2 \\ &< \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \\ &= \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since $(\lambda_1, x_1) \in \mathbb{C} \times X$ is arbitrary, scalar multiplication is continuous.

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \epsilon$. Let $x, y \in X$. Suppose that $\|x - y\| < \delta$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \|x\| - \|y\| \right| &\leq \|x - y\| \\ &< \delta \\ &= \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

So $\|\cdot\| : X \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is uniformly continuous. \square

5.2. Bounded Operators.

Definition 5.2.1. Let X, Y be a normed vector spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$ linear. Then T is said to be **bounded** if $T(\overline{B(0, 1)})$ is bounded. We define

$$L(X, Y) = \{T : X \rightarrow Y : T \text{ is linear and bounded}\}$$

When $X = Y$, we write $L(X)$.

Exercise 5.2.2. Let X, Y be a normed vector spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$ linear. Then T is bounded iff there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $x \in X$,

$$\|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|$$

Proof. Suppose that T is bounded. If $T = 0$, choose $C = 0$. Suppose that $T \neq 0$. Set $A = \{\|Tx\| : \|x\| = 1\}$. Since $T \neq 0$, there exists $x_0 \in X$ such that $\|x_0\| = 1$ so that $A \neq \emptyset$. Boundedness of T implies that A is bounded. Set $C = \sup A$. Let $x \in X$. If $x = 0$, then $Tx = 0$ and $\|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|$. Suppose that $x \neq 0$. Then $Tx = \|x\|T(\|x\|^{-1}x)$. Since $\|\|x\|^{-1}x\| = 1$, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \|Tx\| &= \|T(\|x\|^{-1}x)\|\|x\| \\ &\leq C\|x\| \end{aligned}$$

Conversely, suppose that there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $x \in X$, $\|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|$. Let $x \in \overline{B(0, 1)}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|Tx\| &\leq C\|x\| \\ &\leq C \end{aligned}$$

So that $T(\overline{B(0, 1)})$ is bounded. □

Exercise 5.2.3. Set $X = C^1([0, 1])$ and $Y = C([0, 1])$. Equip both X and Y with the sup norm. Define $T : X \rightarrow Y$ by $Tf = f'$. Then T is not bounded.

Proof. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that T is bounded. Then there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $f \in X$, $\|Tf\| \leq C\|f\|$. Choose $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $n > C$. Define $f \in X$ by $f(x) = x^n$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} n &= \|Tf\| \\ &\leq C\|f\| \\ &= C \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction. Hence T is not bounded. □

Exercise 5.2.4. Let X, Y be a normed vector spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$ a linear map. Then T is bounded iff there exists $r, s > 0$ such that $T(B(0, r)) \subset B(0, s)$

Proof. Suppose that T is bounded. Then there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $x \in X$, $\|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|$. Thus $T(B(0, 1)) \subset B(0, C + 1)$. Conversely. Suppose that there exists $r, s > 0$ such that $T(B(0, r)) \subset B(0, s)$. Define $C = \frac{2s}{r}$. Let $x \in X$. Put $\alpha = \frac{r}{2\|x\|}$. Then

$\alpha x \in B(0, r)$. So $T(\alpha x) = \alpha T(x) \in B(0, s)$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\|T(\alpha x)\| &= \|\alpha T(x)\| \\ &= |\alpha| \|T(x)\| \\ &= \frac{r}{2\|x\|} \|T(x)\| \\ &< s.\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\|Tx\| < \frac{2s}{r} \|x\| = C\|x\|$$

So T is bounded. □

Exercise 5.2.5. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that T is linear. Then there exists $x_0 \in X$ such that T is continuous at x_0 iff T is continuous at 0.

Proof. Suppose that there exists $x_0 \in X$ such that T is continuous at x_0 . Since T is linear, $T(0) = 0$. Let $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$. Suppose that $x_n \rightarrow 0$. Then $x_n + x_0 \rightarrow x_0$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}T(x_n) + T(x_0) &= T(x_n + x_0) \\ &\rightarrow T(x_0)\end{aligned}$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned}T(x_n) &\rightarrow 0 \\ &= T(0)\end{aligned}$$

Therefore T is continuous at 0.

Conversely, if T is continuous at 0, then trivially, there exists $x_0 \in X$ such that T is continuous at x_0 . □

Exercise 5.2.6. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$ a linear map. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1) T is continuous
- (2) T is continuous at $x = 0$
- (3) T is bounded

Proof.

- (1) \implies (2):
Trivial

- (2) \implies (3):

Suppose that T is continuous at $x = 0$. Then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for each $x \in X$, if $\|x\| < \delta$, then $\|Tx\| < 1$. Choose $C = \frac{2}{\delta}$. If $x = 0$, then $\|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|$. Suppose that $\|x\| \neq 0$. Define $y = \frac{\delta}{2\|x\|}x$. Then $\|y\| < \delta$. So

$$\begin{aligned}1 &> \|Ty\| \\ &= \frac{\delta}{2\|x\|} \|Tx\|\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\|Tx\| &< \frac{2}{\delta}\|x\| \\ &= C\|x\|\end{aligned}$$

Hence T is bounded.

• (3) \implies (1)

Suppose that T is bounded. Then there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $x \in X$, $\|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \frac{\epsilon}{C+1}$. Let $x, y \in X$. Suppose that $\|x - y\| < \delta$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|Tx - Ty\| &= \|T(x - y)\| \\ &\leq C\|x - y\| \\ &< (C + 1)\delta \\ &= \epsilon\end{aligned}$$

So T is continuous. □

Definition 5.2.7. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces. Define $\|\cdot\| : L(X, Y) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by

$$\|T\| = \inf\{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } x \in X, \|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|\}$$

We call $\|\cdot\|$ the **operator norm on $L(X, Y)$**

Exercise 5.2.8. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces. If $X \neq \{0\}$, then the operator norm on $L(X, Y)$ is given by:

$$(1) \|T\| = \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|Tx\|$$

$$(2) \|T\| = \sup_{x \neq 0} \|x\|^{-1} \|Tx\|$$

$$(3) \|T\| = \inf\{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } x \in X, \|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|\}$$

Proof. Since $X \neq \{0\}$, the supremums in (1) and (2) are well defined. Let $T \in L(X, Y)$. By linearity of T , the sets over which the supremums are taken in (1) and (2) are the same. So (1) and (2) are equal.

Now, set $M = \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|Tx\|$ and $m = \inf\{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } x \in X, \|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|\}$. Let $x \in X$.

If $\|x\| = 0$, then $\|Tx\| \leq M\|x\|$. Suppose that $\|x\| \neq 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|Tx\| &= \left(\|T(x/\|x\|)\| \right) \|x\| \\ &\leq M\|x\|\end{aligned}$$

Hence $M \in \{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } x \in X, \|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|\}$ and $m \leq M$. Let $C \in \{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } x \in X, \|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|\}$. Suppose that $\|x\| = 1$. Then $\|Tx\| \leq C\|x\| = C$. So $M \leq C$. Therefore $M \leq m$. So $M = m$ and the supremum in (1) is the same as the infimum in (3). □

Note 5.2.9. From here on, unless stated otherwise, we assume $X \neq 0$.

Exercise 5.2.10. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$. Then for each $x \in X$, $\|Tx\| \leq \|T\|\|x\|$

Proof. This is just part of the previous exercise. Let $x \in X$. If $x = 0$, then $\|Tx\| \leq \|T\|\|x\|$. Suppose that $x \neq 0$. Then $\|Tx\| = T(x/\|x\|)\|x\| \leq \|T\|\|x\|$ \square

Exercise 5.2.11. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces. Then the operator norm is a norm on $L(X, Y)$.

Proof. Let $S, T \in L(X, Y)$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$. For each $x \in X$, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \|(S + T)x\| &= \|Sx + Tx\| \\ &\leq \|Sx\| + \|Tx\| \\ &\leq \|S\|\|x\| + \|T\|\|x\| \\ &= (\|S\| + \|T\|)\|x\| \end{aligned}$$

So $\|S + T\| \leq \|S\| + \|T\|$.

Using the definition of $\|T\|$, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \|\alpha T\| &= \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|(\alpha T)x\| \\ &= \sup_{\|x\|=1} |\alpha| \|Tx\| \\ &= |\alpha| \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|Tx\| \\ &= |\alpha| \|T\| \end{aligned}$$

So $\|\alpha S\| = |\alpha| \|S\|$.

Suppose that $\|T\| = 0$. Let $x \in X$. Then $\|Tx\| \leq \|T\|\|x\| = 0$. So $Tx = 0$. Since $x \in X$ is arbitrary, we have that $T = 0$. \square

Exercise 5.2.12. Let X, Y, Z be normed vector spaces, $T \in L(X, Y)$ and $S \in L(Y, Z)$. Define $ST : X \rightarrow Z$ by $STx = S(Tx)$. Then $ST \in L(X, Z)$ and $\|ST\| \leq \|S\|\|T\|$.

Proof. Clearly ST is linear. Let $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|STx\| &= \|S(Tx)\| \\ &\leq \|S\|\|Tx\| \\ &\leq \|S\|\|T\|\|x\| \end{aligned}$$

So $\|ST\| \leq \|S\|\|T\|$. \square

Definition 5.2.13. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$. Then T is said to be **invertible** or an **isomorphism** if T is a bijection and $T^{-1} \in L(Y, X)$.

Definition 5.2.14. Let X be a normed vector space. Define $GL(X) := \{T \in L(X, X) : T \text{ is invertible}\}$.

Exercise 5.2.15. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces. If Y is complete, then so is $L(X, Y)$.

Proof. Suppose that Y is complete. Let $(T_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset L(X, Y)$. Suppose that $(T_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy. Since for each $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, $|\|T_m\| - \|T_n\|| \leq \|T_m - T_n\|$, we have that $(\|T_n\|)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset [0, \infty)$ is Cauchy. Hence $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n\|$ exists.

Let $x \in X$ and $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_m x - T_n x\| &= \|(T_m - T_n)x\| \\ &\leq \|T_m - T_n\| \|x\| \end{aligned}$$

So $(T_n x)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset Y$ is Cauchy and hence converges. Define $T : X \rightarrow Y$ by $Tx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_n x$.

Since addition and scalar multiplication are continuous, T is linear. Let $x \in X$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, if $n \geq N$, then $\|Tx - T_n x\| < \epsilon$. Then for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, if $n \geq N$ we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \|Tx\| &\leq \|Tx - T_n x\| + \|T_n x\| \\ &< \epsilon + \|T_n x\| \\ &\leq \epsilon + \|T_n\| \|x\| \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\|Tx\| \leq \epsilon + (\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n\|) \|x\|$. Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary, $\|Tx\| \leq (\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n\|) \|x\|$. Thus $T \in L(X, Y)$ and $\|T\| \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n\|$.

Note that since addition, scalar multiplication and $\|\cdot\|$ are continuous, we have that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $x \in X$, $\|(T_n - T_m)x\|$ converges to $\|(T_n - T)x\|$ because

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \|(T_n - T_m)x\| &= \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n x - T_m x\| \\ &= \|T_n x - \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} T_m x\| \\ &= \|T_n x - Tx\| \\ &= \|(T_n - T)x\| \end{aligned}$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$ if $n, m \geq N$, then $\|T_n - T_m\| < \epsilon$. Then for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ if $n \geq N$, then for each $x \in X$,

$$\|(T_n - T_m)x\| \leq \|T_n - T_m\| \|x\| < \epsilon \|x\|$$

Combining this with the previous fact, we see that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, if $n \geq N$, then for each $x \in X$,

$$\|(T_n - T)x\| \leq \epsilon \|x\|$$

In particular, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, if $n \geq N$, then

$$\|T_n - T\| = \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|(T_n - T)x\| \leq \epsilon$$

This implies that T_n converges to T in $L(X, Y)$. Since

$$|\|T_n\| - \|T\|| \leq \|T_n - T\|$$

it is clear that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|T_n\| = \|T\|$

□

5.3. Direct Sums.

Definition 5.3.1. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $p \in [1, \infty]$. Let $\|\cdot\|'_p : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ denote the usual l^p norm. We define $\|\cdot\|_p : X \oplus Y \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by

$$\|(x, y)\|_p = \|(\|x\|, \|y\|)\|'_p$$

Exercise 5.3.2. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces. Then

- (1) for each $p \in [1, \infty]$, $\|\cdot\|_p : X \oplus Y \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is a norm on $X \oplus Y$
- (2) $\{\|\cdot\|_p : p \in [1, \infty]\}$ are equivalent.

Proof.

- (1) Let $p \in [1, \infty]$, $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \in X \oplus Y$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.

- Clearly if $(x_1, y_1) = (0, 0)$, then $\|S\|_p = 0$. Conversely, suppose that $\|(x_1, y_1)\|_p = 0$. Then $\|x_1\| = 0$ and $\|y_1\| = 0$. So $x_1 = 0$ and $y_1 = 0$. Therefore $S = 0$.

•

$$\begin{aligned} \|\lambda(x_1, y_1)\|_p &= \|(\|\lambda x_1\|, \|\lambda y_1\|)\|'_p \\ &= \|(|\lambda|\|x_1\|, |\lambda|\|y_1\|)\|'_p \\ &= \| |\lambda| (\|x_1\|, \|y_1\|) \|'_p \\ &= |\lambda| \|(\|x_1\|, \|y_1\|)\|'_p \\ &= |\lambda| \|(x_1, y_1)\|_p \end{aligned}$$

•

$$\begin{aligned} \|(x_1, y_1) + (x_2, y_2)\|_p &= \|(\|x_1 + x_2\|, \|y_1 + y_2\|)\|'_p \\ &\leq \|(\|x_1\| + \|x_2\|, \|y_1\| + \|y_2\|)\|'_p \\ &= \|(\|x_1\|, \|y_1\|) + (\|x_2\|, \|y_2\|)\|'_p \\ &\leq \|(\|x_1\|, \|y_1\|)\|'_p + \|(\|x_2\|, \|y_2\|)\|'_p \\ &= \|(x_1, y_1)\|_p + \|(x_2, y_2)\|_p \end{aligned}$$

- (2) All norms on \mathbb{R}^2 are equivalent.

□

Exercise 5.3.3. Let X, Y be Banach spaces. Then $X \oplus Y$ equipped with $\|\cdot\|_p : X \oplus Y \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is a Banach space.

Proof.

□

Exercise 5.3.4. Let X, Y and Z be Banach spaces and $p \in [0, \infty]$. Equip $Y \oplus Z$ with $\|\cdot\|_p$. Let $T \in L(X, Y \oplus Z)$ with $T = (T_Y, T_Z)$. Then $T_Y \in L(X, Y)$ and $T_Z \in L(X, Z)$.

Proof. Let $x \in X$. Then $\|T_Y(x)\|, \|T_Z(x)\| \leq$

FINISH!!!

□

Definition 5.3.5. Let X, Y and Z be Banach spaces and $p \in [0, \infty]$. Let $\|\cdot\|'_p : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ denote the usual l^p norm. Equip $Y \oplus Z$ with $\|\cdot\|_p$. Let $T \in L(X, Y \oplus Z)$ with $T = (T_Y, T_Z)$. Define $\|T\|_p : L(X, Y \oplus Z) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by

$$\|T\|_p = \|(\|T_Y\|, \|T_Z\|)\|'_p$$

Exercise 5.3.6. Let X, Y and Z be Banach spaces and $p \in [0, \infty]$. Then $\|\cdot\|_p : L(X, Y \oplus Z) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is a norm on $L(X, Y \oplus Z)$.

Proof. Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ and $S, T \in L(X, Y \oplus Z)$ with $S = (S_Y, S_Z)$ and $T = (T_Y, T_Z)$.

- Clearly if $S = 0$, then $\|S\|_p = 0$. Conversely, suppose that $\|S\|_p = 0$. Then $\|S_Y\| = 0$ and $\|S_Z\| = 0$. So $S_Y = 0$ and $S_Z = 0$. Therefore $S = 0$.
-

$$\begin{aligned} \|\lambda S\|_p &= \|(\|\lambda S_Y\|, \|\lambda S_Z\|)\|'_p \\ &= \|(|\lambda| \|S_Y\|, |\lambda| \|S_Z\|)\|'_p \\ &= \| |\lambda| (\|S_Y\|, \|S_Z\|) \|'_p \\ &= |\lambda| \|(\|S_Y\|, \|S_Z\|)\|'_p \\ &= |\lambda| \|S\|_p \end{aligned}$$

•

$$\begin{aligned} \|S + T\|_p &= \|(\|S_Y + T_Y\|, \|S_Z + T_Z\|)\|'_p \\ &\leq \|(\|S_Y\| + \|T_Y\|, \|S_Z\| + \|T_Z\|)\|'_p \\ &= \|(\|S_Y\|, \|S_Z\|) + (\|T_Y\|, \|T_Z\|)\|'_p \\ &\leq \|(\|S_Y\|, \|S_Z\|)\|'_p + \|(\|T_Y\|, \|T_Z\|)\|'_p \\ &= \|S\|_p + \|T\|_p \end{aligned}$$

So $\|\cdot\|_p : L(X, Y \oplus Z) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is a norm on $L(X, Y \oplus Z)$. □

Exercise 5.3.7. Let X, Y and Z be Banach spaces and $p \in [0, \infty]$. Equip $Y \oplus Z$ with $\|\cdot\|_p$. Let $T \in L(X, Y \oplus Z)$ with $T = (T_Y, T_Z)$. Then $\|T\| \leq 2^{1/p} \|T\|_p$.

Proof. Let $x \in X$. If $p < \infty$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(x)\|_p &= \|(T_Y(x), T_Z(x))\|_p \\ &= \|(\|T_Y(x)\|, \|T_Z(x)\|)\|'_p \\ &= \left(\|T_Y(x)\|^p + \|T_Z(x)\|^p \right)^{1/p} \\ &\leq \left(\|T_Y\|^p \|x\|^p + \|T_Z\|^p \|x\|^p \right)^{1/p} \\ &\leq \left[(\|T_Y\|^p + \|T_Z\|^p) \|x\|^p + (\|T_Y\|^p + \|T_Z\|^p) \|x\|^p \right]^{1/p} \\ &= \left[2(\|T_Y\|^p + \|T_Z\|^p) \|x\|^p \right]^{1/p} \\ &= 2^{1/p} \|T\|_p \|x\| \end{aligned}$$

Hence $\|T\| \leq 2^{1/p} \|T\|_p$ If $p = \infty$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|T(x)\|_\infty &= \max(\|T_Y(x)\|, \|T_Z(x)\|) \\
 &\leq \max(\|T_Y\| \|x\|, \|T_Z\| \|x\|) \\
 &\leq \max \left[\max(\|T_Y\|, \|T_Z\|) \|x\|, \max(\|T_Y\|, \|T_Z\|) \|x\| \right] \\
 &= \max(\|T_Y\|, \|T_Z\|) \|x\| \\
 &= \|T\|_\infty \|x\|
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|T\| &\leq \|T\|_\infty \\
 &= 2^{1/\infty} \|T\|_\infty
 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 5.3.8. Let X and X_1, \dots, X_n be Banach spaces and $p \in [0, \infty]$. Equip $\bigoplus_{j=1}^n X_j$ with

$\|\cdot\|_p$. Let $T \in L(X, \bigoplus_{j=1}^n X_j)$. Then $\|T\| \leq n^{1/p} \|T\|_p$.

Proof. Similar to the previous exercise.

□

5.4. Quotient Spaces.

Definition 5.4.1. Let X be a normed vector space and $M \subset X$ a closed subspace. Define $\|\cdot\| : X/M \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by

$$\|x + M\| := \inf_{y \in M} \|x + y\|$$

We call $\|\cdot\|$ the **subspace norm on X/M**

Exercise 5.4.2. Let X be a normed vector space and $M \subsetneq X$ a proper, closed subspace of X . Then

- (1) The previously defined subspace norm on X/M is well defined and is a norm.
- (2) For each $\epsilon > 0$, there exists $x \in X$ such that $\|x\| = 1$ and $\|x + M\| \geq 1 - \epsilon$.
- (3) The projection map $\pi : X \rightarrow X/M$ defined by $\pi(x) = x + M$ is continuous and $\|\pi\| = 1$.
- (4) If X is complete, then X/M is complete.

Proof.

- (1) Let $x, y \in X$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$. Suppose that $x + M = y + M$. Then there exists $m \in M$ such that $x = y + m$. Since M is a subspace, the map $T : M \rightarrow M$ given by $Tx = x + m$ is a bijection. So

$$\inf_{z \in M} \|y + m + z\| = \inf_{z \in M} \|y + z\|$$

which implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \|x + M\| &= \inf_{z \in M} \|x + z\| \\ &= \inf_{z \in M} \|y + m + z\| \\ &= \inf_{z \in M} \|y + z\| \\ &= \|y + M\| \end{aligned}$$

So $\|\cdot\| : X/M \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is well defined.

We observe that for each $z, w \in M$,

$$\|x + y + z\| \leq \|x + w\| + \|y + w + z\|$$

Taking infimums over M with respect to z in this inequality implies that for each $w \in M$,

$$\begin{aligned} \inf_{z \in M} \|x + y + z\| &\leq \inf_{z \in M} (\|x + w\| + \|y + w + z\|) \\ &= \|x + w\| + \inf_{z \in M} \|y + w + z\| \end{aligned}$$

Again we use the fact that for each $w \in M$,

$$\inf_{z \in M} \|y + w + z\| = \inf_{z \in M} \|y + z\|$$

This implies that for each $w \in M$,

$$\inf_{z \in M} \|x + y + z\| \leq \|x + w\| + \inf_{z \in M} \|y + z\|$$

Therefore, taking infimums over M with respect to w in this inequality yields

$$\begin{aligned}\|x + y + M\| &= \inf_{z \in M} \|x + y + z\| \\ &\leq \inf_{w \in M} \left(\|x + w\| + \inf_{z \in M} \|y + z\| \right) \\ &= \inf_{w \in M} \|x + w\| + \inf_{z \in M} \|y + z\| \\ &= \|x + M\| + \|y + M\|\end{aligned}$$

If $\alpha = 0$, then $\alpha x = 0$. Choosing $z = 0 \in M$ gives $\|\alpha x + M\| = 0 = |\alpha| \|x + M\|$. Suppose that $\alpha \neq 0$. Then the map $T : M \rightarrow M$ given by $Tx = \alpha^{-1}x$ is a bijection and thus $\inf_{z \in M} \|x + \alpha^{-1}z\| = \inf_{z \in M} \|x + z\|$. Hence we have that

$$\begin{aligned}\|\alpha x + M\| &= \inf_{z \in M} \|\alpha x + z\| \\ &= \inf_{z \in M} |\alpha| \|x + \alpha^{-1}z\| \\ &= |\alpha| \inf_{z \in M} \|x + \alpha^{-1}z\| \\ &= |\alpha| \inf_{z \in M} \|x + z\| \\ &= |\alpha| \|x + M\|\end{aligned}$$

Suppose that $\|x\| = 0$. Choose a sequence $(z_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|x - z_n\| &= \inf_{z \in M} \|x + z\| \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} z_n = x$. Since M is closed, $x \in M$. Hence $x + M = 0 + M$.

- (2) Since M is a proper subspace, there exists $v \in X$ such that $v \notin M$. Then $\|v + M\| \neq 0$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then $(1 - \epsilon)^{-1} \|v + M\| > \|v + M\|$. So there exists $z \in M$ such that

$$0 < \|v + M\| \leq \|v + z\| < (1 - \epsilon)^{-1} \|v + M\|$$

Choose $x = \|v + z\|^{-1}(v + z)$. Then $\|x\| = 1$ and

$$\begin{aligned}\|x + M\| &= \|v + z\|^{-1} \|v + z + M\| \\ &= \|v + z\|^{-1} \|v + M\| \\ &> 1 - \epsilon\end{aligned}$$

- (3) Let $x \in X$. Taking $z = 0$, we see that $\|\pi(x)\| = \|x + M\| \leq \|x + z\| = \|x\|$. So π is bounded and in particular,

$$\sup_{\|x\|=1} \|\pi(x)\| \leq 1$$

From (2) we see that

$$\sup_{\|x\|=1} \|\pi(x)\| \geq 1$$

Hence $\|\pi\| = 1$.

- (4) Suppose that X is complete. Let $(x_i + M)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X/M$. Suppose that $\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|x_i + M\| < \infty$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then for each $i \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $z_i \in M$ such that $\|x_i + z_i\| < \|x_i + M\| + \epsilon 2^{-i}$. Define the sequence $(a_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ by $a_i = x_i + z_i$. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|a_i\| &= \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|x_i + z_i\| \\ &\leq \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \left(\|x_i + M\| + \epsilon 2^{-i} \right) \\ &= \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|x_i + M\| + \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary, it follows that

$$\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|a_i\| \leq \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \|x_i + M\| < \infty$$

Since X is complete, $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i$ converges in X . Define $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ and $s \in X$ by $s_n = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i$ and $s = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i$. Since $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n = s$, and $\pi : X \rightarrow X/M$ is continuous, it follows that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \pi(s_n) = \pi(s)$. Since

$$\begin{aligned} \pi(s_n) &= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i + M \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + M \end{aligned}$$

We have that $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_i + M$ converges which implies that X/M is complete.

□

Exercise 5.4.3. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$. Then

- (1) $\ker T$ is closed
- (2) there exists a unique map $S : X/\ker T \rightarrow T(X)$ such that $T = S \circ \pi$. Furthermore S is a bounded linear bijection and $\|S\| = \|T\|$.

Proof. (1) Since T is continuous and $\ker T = T^{-1}(\{0\})$, we have that $\ker T$ is closed.

- (2) Suppose that there exists $S_1, S_2 \in L(X/\ker T, T(X))$ such that $T = S_1 \circ \pi$ and $T = S_2 \circ \pi$. Let $x \in X$. Then

$$S_1(x + \ker T) = S_1(\pi(x)) = T(x) = S_2(\pi(x)) = S_2(x + \ker T)$$

So $S_1 = S_2$. Therefore such a map is unique.

Define $S : X/\ker T \rightarrow T(X)$ by $S(x + \ker T) = T(x)$. Then S is clearly a linear bijection that satisfies $T = S \circ \pi$. Let $x \in X$ and $z \in \ker T$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|S(x + \ker T)\| &= \|T(x)\| \\ &= \|T(x + z)\| \\ &\leq \|T\|\|x + z\|\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\|S(x + \ker T)\| \leq \|T\| \inf_{z \in \ker T} \|x + z\| = \|T\|\|x + \ker T\|$$

So S is bounded and $\|S\| \leq \|T\|$. This implies that

$$\|T\| = \|S \circ \pi\| \leq \|S\|\|\pi\| = \|S\|$$

Thus $\|S\| = \|T\|$. □

Exercise 5.4.4. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces. Define $\phi : L(X, Y) \times X \rightarrow Y$ by $\phi(T, x) = Tx$. Then ϕ is continuous.

Proof. Let $(T_1, x_1) \in L(X, Y) \times X$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \min\{\frac{\epsilon}{2(\|x_1\| + \|T_1\| + 1)}, \frac{\sqrt{\epsilon}}{\sqrt{2}}\}$. Let $(t_2, x_2) \in L(X, Y) \times X$. Suppose that

$$\|(T_1, x_1) - (T_2, x_2)\| = \max\{\|T_1 - T_2\|, \|x_1 - x_2\|\} < \delta$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|\phi(T_1, x_1) - \phi(T_2, x_2)\| &= \|T_1x_1 - T_2x_2\| \\ &= \|T_1x_1 - T_2x_1 + T_2x_1 - T_2x_2\| \\ &\leq \|(T_1 - T_2)x_1\| + \|T_2(x_1 - x_2)\| \\ &\leq \|T_1 - T_2\|\|x_1\| + \|T_2\|\|x_1 - x_2\| \\ &\leq \|T_1 - T_2\|\|x_1\| + (\|T_1 - T_2\| + \|T_1\|)\|x_1 - x_2\| \\ &< \delta\|x_1\| + (\delta + \|T_1\|)\delta \\ &= \delta(\|T_1\| + \|x_1\|) + \delta^2 \\ &< \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \\ &= \epsilon\end{aligned}$$

So ϕ is continuous. □

Exercise 5.4.5. Let X be a normed vector space and $M \subset X$ a subspace. Then \overline{M} is a subspace.

Proof. Let $x, y \in \overline{M}$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$. Then there exist sequences $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M$ and $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M$ such that $x_n \rightarrow x$ and $y_n \rightarrow y$. Since M is a subspace, $(x_n + y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M$ and $(\alpha x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M$. Since addition and scalar multiplication are continuous, we have that $x_n + y_n \rightarrow x + y$ and $\alpha x_n \rightarrow \alpha x$. Thus $x + y \in \overline{M}$ and $\alpha x \in \overline{M}$ and hence \overline{M} is a subspace. □

5.5. The Hahn-Banach Theorem.

Definition 5.5.1. Let X be a vector space over \mathbb{C} and $T : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Then T is said to be a **linear functional on X** if T is linear. We define the **algebraic dual space of X** , denoted X^* , by $X^* = \{T : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C} : T \text{ is linear}\}$

Note 5.5.2. We define X^* similarly when X is a vector space over \mathbb{R} .

Definition 5.5.3. Let X be a normed vector space over \mathbb{C} , and $T : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Then T is said to be a **bounded linear functional on X** if $T \in L(X, \mathbb{C})$. We define the **dual space of X** , denoted X^* , by $X^* = L(X, \mathbb{C})$.

Note 5.5.4. We define X^* similarly when X is a normed vector space over \mathbb{R} .

Definition 5.5.5. Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then p is said to be a **sublinear functional** if for each $x, y \in X$, $\lambda \geq 0$,

- (1) $p(x + y) \leq p(x) + p(y)$
- (2) $p(\lambda x) = \lambda p(x)$

Exercise 5.5.6. Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a sublinear functional. Then $p(0) = 0$.

Proof. Set $\lambda = 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \lambda p(0) \\ &= p(\lambda 0) \\ &= p(0) \end{aligned}$$

□

Proof. Clear

□

Definition 5.5.7. Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then p is said to be a **seminorm** if for each $x, y \in X$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$,

- (1) $p(x + y) \leq p(x) + p(y)$
- (2) $p(\lambda x) = |\lambda|p(x)$

Exercise 5.5.8. Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a seminorm, then p is a sublinear functional.

Proof. Clear

□

Exercise 5.5.9. Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a seminorm. Then $p \geq 0$.

Proof. Let $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= p(0) \\ &= p(x - x) \\ &\leq p(x) + p(-x) \\ &= p(x) + p(x) \\ &= 2p(x) \end{aligned}$$

So $p(x) \geq 0$.

□

Exercise 5.5.10. Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a sublinear functional. Then for each $x, y \in X$

- (1) $-p(-x) \leq p(x)$
- (2) $-p(y - x) \leq p(x) - p(y) \leq p(x - y)$

Proof. Let $x, y \in X$.

- (1) We have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= p(0) \\ &= p(x - x) \\ &\leq p(x) + p(-x) \end{aligned}$$

So $-p(-x) \leq p(x)$.

- (2) We have

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &= p(x - y + y) \\ &\leq p(x - y) + p(y) \end{aligned}$$

So $p(x) - p(y) \leq p(x - y)$. Switching x and y gives us $p(y) - p(x) \leq p(y - x)$ and multiplying both sides by -1 yields $-p(y - x) \leq p(x) - p(y)$

Putting these two together, we see that

$$-p(y - x) \leq p(x) - p(y) \leq p(x - y)$$

□

Definition 5.5.11. Let X be a normed vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a sublinear functional. Then p is said to be **bounded** if there exists $M > 0$ such that for each $x \in X$, $p(x) \leq M\|x\|$.

Exercise 5.5.12. Let X be a normed vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a sublinear functional. Then p is bounded iff p is Lipschitz.

Proof. Suppose that p is bounded. Then there exists $M > 0$ such that for each $x \in X$, $p(x) \leq M\|x\|$. Let $x, y \in X$. Then the previous exercise implies that

$$\begin{aligned} -M\|x - y\| &= -M\|y - x\| \\ &\leq -p(y - x) \\ &\leq p(x) - p(y) \\ &\leq p(x - y) \\ &\leq M\|x - y\| \end{aligned}$$

So that

$$|p(x) - p(y)| \leq M\|x - y\|$$

and p is Lipschitz. Conversely, suppose that p is Lipschitz. Then there exists $M > 0$ such that for each $x, y \in X$, $|p(x) - p(y)| \leq M\|x - y\|$. Let $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &\leq |p(x)| \\ &= |p(x) - p(0)| \\ &\leq M\|x - 0\| \\ &\leq M\|x\| \end{aligned}$$

So p is bounded.

□

Theorem 5.5.13. Hahn-Banach Theorem

Let X be a vector space, $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a sublinear functional, $M \subset X$ a subspace and $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a linear functional. If for each $x \in M$, $f(x) \leq p(x)$, then there exists a linear functional $F : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that for each $x \in X$, $F(x) \leq p(x)$ and $F|_M = f$.

Exercise 5.5.14. Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a sublinear functional. Then there exists a linear functional $F : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that for each $x \in X$, $F(x) \leq p(x)$.

Proof. Take $M = \{0\}$ and $f \equiv 0$ and apply the Hahn-Banach theorem. \square

Exercise 5.5.15. Equivalency of linearity (General Case) Let X be a vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a sublinear functional. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1) there exists a unique $F \in X^*$ such that $F \leq p$
- (2) for each $x \in X$, $-p(-x) = p(x)$
- (3) p is linear

Hint: If there exists $x \in X$ such that $-p(-x) \neq p(x)$, define $f_1, f_2 : \text{span}(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $f_1(tx) = tp(x)$ and $f_2(tx) = -tp(-x)$

Proof.

- (1) \implies (2):

Suppose that there exists a unique $F \in X^*$ such that $F \leq p$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that there exists $x \in X$ such that $-p(-x) \neq p(x)$. Define $f_1, f_2 : \text{span}(x) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$f_1(tx) = tp(x)$$

and

$$f_2(tx) = -tp(-x)$$

Let $y \in \text{span}(x)$. Then there exists $t \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $y = tx$. Then for each $k \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\begin{aligned} f_1(ky) &= f_1(ktx) \\ &= ktp(x) \\ &= kf_1(tx) \\ &= kf_1(y) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $f_2(ky) = kf_2(y)$ and so $f_1, f_2 \in \text{span}(x)^*$. If $t \geq 0$, then

$$\begin{aligned} f_1(y) &= f_1(tx) \\ &= tp(x) \\ &= p(tx) \\ &= p(y) \end{aligned}$$

If $t < 0$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_1(y) &= f_1(tx) \\
 &= tp(x) \\
 &= -|t|p(x) \\
 &= -p(|t|x) \\
 &= -p(-tx) \\
 &\leq p(tx) \\
 &= p(y)
 \end{aligned}$$

So $f_1 \leq p$ on $\text{span}(x)$. Similarly, $f_2 \leq p$ on $\text{span}(x)$. The Hahn-Banach theorem implies that there exist $F_1, F_2 \in X^*$ such that $F_1, F_2 \leq p$ and $F_1 = f_1, F_2 = f_2$ on $\text{span}(x)$. By the assumption of uniqueness, $F_1 = F_2$. This is a contradiction since

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_1(x) &= p(x) \\
 &\neq -p(-x) \\
 &= F_2(x)
 \end{aligned}$$

So for each $x \in X$, $-p(-x) = p(x)$.

- (2) \Rightarrow (3):

Suppose that for each $x \in X$, $-p(-x) = p(x)$. The previous exercise implies that there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $F \leq p$. Let $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 -F(x) &= F(-x) \\
 &\leq p(-x) \\
 &= -p(x)
 \end{aligned}$$

So $p(x) \leq F(x)$ and $p \leq F$. Therefore $p = F$ and p is linear.

- (3) \Rightarrow (1):

Suppose that p is linear. Let $F \in X^*$. Suppose that $F \leq p$. Let $x \in X$. Then as in the case for (2) \Rightarrow (3), we have that

$$\begin{aligned}
 -F(x) &= F(-x) \\
 &\leq p(-x) \\
 &= -p(x)
 \end{aligned}$$

which implies that $p = F$. So p is the unique linear function $F \in X^*$ such that $F \leq p$. \square

Exercise 5.5.16. Let X be a normed vector space, $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a bounded sublinear functional and $\phi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a linear functional. If $\phi \leq p$, then $\phi \in X^*$.

Proof. Since p is Lipschitz, there exists $M > 0$ such that for each $x \in X$,

$$\begin{aligned}
 p(x) &\leq |p(x)| \\
 &\leq M\|x\|
 \end{aligned}$$

Let $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(x) &\leq p(x) \\ &\leq |p(x)| \\ &\leq M\|x\|\end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$\begin{aligned}-M\|x\| &= -M\|-x\| \\ &\leq -p(-x) \\ &\leq -\phi(-x) \\ &= \phi(x)\end{aligned}$$

So that $|\phi(x)| \leq M\|x\|$ and $\phi \in X^*$. □

Exercise 5.5.17. Let X be a normed vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a bounded sublinear functional. Then there exists $\phi \in X^*$ such that for each $x \in X$, $\phi(x) \leq p(x)$.

Proof. A previous exercise implies there exists $\phi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that ϕ is linear and $\phi \leq p$. The previous exercise implies that $\phi \in X^*$. □

Exercise 5.5.18. Equivalency of linearity (Bounded Case)

Let X be a normed vector space and $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a bounded sublinear functional. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1) there exists a unique $\phi \in X^*$ such that $\phi \leq p$
- (2) for each $x \in X$, $-p(-x) = p(x)$
- (3) p is linear

Proof. Basically the same as last time. □

Theorem 5.5.19. Complex Hahn-Banach Theorem

Let X be a vector space, $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a seminorm, $M \subset X$ a subspace and $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ a linear functional. If for each $x \in M$, $|f(x)| \leq p(x)$, then there exists a linear functional $F : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ such that for each $x \in X$, $|F(x)| \leq p(x)$ and $F|_M = f$.

Exercise 5.5.20. Let X be a normed vector space, $M \subset X$ a subspace and $f \in M^*$. Then there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $\|F\| = \|f\|$ and $F|_M = f$.

Proof. If $f = 0$, Choose $F = 0$. Suppose $f \neq 0$. Then $\|f\| \neq 0$ and there exists $x_0 \in M$ such that $x_0 \neq 0$. Thus $\|f\| = \sup\{|f(x)| : x \in M \text{ and } \|x\| = 1\}$. Define $p : X \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by $p(x) = \|f\|\|x\|$. Then p is a sublinear functional on X and for each $x \in M$, $|f(x)| \leq p(x)$. So there exists a linear functional $F : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ such that for each $x \in X$, $|F(x)| \leq p(x) = \|f\|\|x\|$ and $F|_M = f$. Thus $F \in X^*$ with $\|F\| \leq \|f\|$. Also

$$\|F\| = \sup_{\substack{x \in X \\ \|x\|=1}} |F(x)| \geq \sup_{\substack{x \in M \\ \|x\|=1}} |F(x)| = \sup_{\substack{x \in M \\ \|x\|=1}} |f(x)| = \|f\|$$

So $\|F\| = \|f\|$. □

Exercise 5.5.21. Let X be a normed vector space, $M \subsetneq X$ a proper closed subspace and $x \in X \setminus M$. Then there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $F|_M = 0$, $\|F\| = 1$ and $F(x) = \|x + M\| \neq 0$. **Hint:** Consider $f : M + \mathbb{C}x \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ defined by $f(m + \lambda x) = \lambda\|x + M\|$.

Proof. Define $f : M + \mathbb{C}x \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ as above. Clearly f is linear and $f|_M = 0$. Let $m \in M$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. If $\lambda = 0$, then $|f(m + \lambda x)| = 0 \leq \|m + \lambda x\|$. Suppose that $\lambda \neq 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} |f(m + \lambda x)| &= |\lambda| \|x + M\| \\ &= \|\lambda x + M\| \\ &= \inf_{z \in M} \|z + \lambda x\| \\ &\leq \|m + \lambda x\| \end{aligned}$$

So $f \in (M + \mathbb{C}x)^*$ and $\|f\| \leq 1$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. A previous exercise tells us that there exist $m \in M, \lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $\|m + \lambda x\| = 1$ and $\|m + \lambda x + M\| > 1 - \epsilon$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} |f(m + \lambda x)| &= |\lambda| \|x + M\| \\ &= \|\lambda x + M\| \\ &= \|m + \lambda x + M\| \\ &> 1 - \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\|f\| = \sup_{\substack{z \in M + \mathbb{C}x \\ \|z\|=1}} |f(z)| \geq 1$$

Hence $\|f\| = 1$. The same exercise also tells us that $f(x) = \|x + M\| \neq 0$. Using the previous exercise, there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $\|F\| = \|f\| = 1$ and $F|_{M + \mathbb{C}x} = f$. \square

Exercise 5.5.22. Let X be a normed vector space and $x \in X$. If $x \neq 0$, then there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $\|F\| = 1$ and $F(x) = \|x\|$.

Proof. Define $f : \mathbb{C}x \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $f(\lambda x) = \lambda \|x\|$. Then f is linear and $f(x) = \|x\|$. Clearly

$$\sup_{\substack{z \in \mathbb{C}x \\ \|z\|=1}} |f(z)| = 1$$

So $f \in (\mathbb{C}x)^*$ and $\|f\| = 1$. By a previous exercise, there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $\|F\| = \|f\| = 1$ and $F|_{\mathbb{C}x} = f$. \square

Exercise 5.5.23. Let X be a normed vector space and $x \in X$. Then $x = 0$ iff for each $\phi \in X^*$, $\phi(x) = 0$.

Proof. Clear by previous exercise. \square

Exercise 5.5.24. Let X be a normed vector space. Then X^* separates the points of X .

Proof. Let $x, y \in X$. Suppose that $x \neq y$. Then $x - y \neq 0$. The previous exercise implies that there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $\|F\| = 1$ and

$$F(x) - F(y) = F(x - y) = \|x - y\| \neq 0$$

Thus $F(x) \neq F(y)$ and X^* separates the points of X . \square

Exercise 5.5.25. Let X be a normed vector space and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ a linear functional on X . Then f is bounded iff $\ker f$ is closed.

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous. Since $\{0\}$ is closed, we have that $\ker f = f^{-1}(\{0\})$ is closed. Conversely, suppose that $\ker f$ is closed. If $\ker f = X$, then $f = 0$ and f is continuous. Suppose that $\ker f \neq X$. Then $\ker f$ is a proper, closed subspace of X . A previous exercise tells us that there exists $x \in X$ such that $\|x\| = 1$ and $\|x + \ker f\| > \frac{1}{2}$. Let $y \in X$. Suppose that $\|y\| < \frac{1}{2}$. Then for each $z \in \ker f$,

$$\begin{aligned} \|z - (x + y)\| &= \|(z - x) - y\| \\ &\geq \|z - x\| - \|y\| \\ &> \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So $x + y \notin \ker f$. Therefore $f(B(x, \frac{1}{2})) \cap \{0\} = \emptyset$. If $f(B(x, \frac{1}{2}))$ is unbounded, then $f(B(x, \frac{1}{2})) = \mathbb{C}$ by linearity. This is a contradiction since $0 \notin f(B(x, \frac{1}{2}))$. So There exists $s > 0$ such that $f(B(x, \frac{1}{2})) \subset B(0, s)$ and thus f is bounded. \square

Exercise 5.5.26. Let X be a normed vector space.

- (1) Let $M \subsetneq X$ be a proper closed subspace of X and $x \in X \setminus M$. Then $M + \mathbb{C}x$ is closed.
- (2) Let $M \subset X$ be a finite dimensional subspace of X . Then M is closed.

Proof. (1) Let $y \in X$ and $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M + \mathbb{C}x$. Suppose that $y_n \rightarrow y$. If $y \in M$, then $y \in M + \mathbb{C}x$. Suppose that $y \notin M$. For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $m_n \in M$ and $\lambda_n \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $y_n = m_n + \lambda_n x$. A previous exercise tells us that there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $\|F\| = 1$, $F|_M = 0$ and $F(x) = \|x + M\| \neq 0$. Since F is continuous, $F(y_n) \rightarrow F(y)$. Since for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$F(y_n) = F(m_n + \lambda_n x) = F(m_n) + \lambda_n F(x) = \lambda_n F(x)$$

we have that $\lambda_n F(x) \rightarrow F(y)$. Since $F(x) \neq 0$, this implies that $\lambda_n \rightarrow F(x)^{-1}F(y)$. It follows that $\lambda_n x \rightarrow F(x)^{-1}F(y)x$. Since for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $m_n = y_n - \lambda_n x$, we know that $m_n \rightarrow y - F(x)^{-1}F(y)x$. Since $(m_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M$ and M is closed, we have that $y - F(x)^{-1}F(y)x \in M$ and therefore $y \in M + \mathbb{C}x$. Hence $M + \mathbb{C}x$ is closed.

- (2) If $M = X$, then M is closed. Suppose that $M \neq X$. Let $(x_i)_{i=1}^n$ be a basis for M . Define $N_0 = \{0\}$ and for each $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$, define $N_i = N_{i-1} + \mathbb{C}x_i$. Since N_0 is a proper closed subspace of X and $x_1 \in X \setminus N_0$, (1) implies that N_1 is closed. Proceed inductively to obtain that $M = N_n$ is closed. \square

Exercise 5.5.27. Let X be an infinite-dimensional normed vector space.

- (1) There exists a sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ such that for each $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\|x_n\| = 1$ and if $m \neq n$, then $\|x_m - x_n\| > \frac{1}{2}$.
- (2) X is not locally compact.

Proof.

- (1) Define $N_0 = \{0\}$. Then N_0 is a closed proper subspace of X . Choose $x_1 \in X$ such that $\|x_1\| = 1$. Using the results of previous exercises, we proceed inductively. For each $n \geq 2$ we define $N_{n-1} = \text{span}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1})$. Then N_{n-1} is a closed

proper subspace of X . Thus we may choose $x_n \in X$ such that $\|x_n\| = 1$ and $\|x_n + N_{n-1}\| > \frac{1}{2}$. Let $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$. Suppose that $m < n$. Then $x_m \in N_{n-1}$. Thus $\|x_n - x_m\| \geq \|x_n + N_{n-1}\| > \frac{1}{2}$

- (2) Suppose that X is locally compact. Then $\overline{B(0, 1)}$ is compact and therefore sequentially compact. Using $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset \overline{B(0, 1)}$ defined in (1), we see that there exists a subsequence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$, $x \in \overline{B(0, 1)}$ such that $x_{n_k} \rightarrow x$. Then $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy. So there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $j, k \in \mathbb{N}$, if $j, k \geq N$, then $\|x_{n_j} - x_{n_k}\| < \frac{1}{2}$. Then $\|x_{n_N} - x_{n_{N+1}}\| < \frac{1}{2}$. This is a contradiction since by construction, $\|x_{n_N} - x_{n_{N+1}}\| > \frac{1}{2}$. Thus X is not locally compact.

□

5.6. The Baire Category and Closed Graph Theorems.

Theorem 5.6.1. Let X, Y be Banach spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$. If T is surjective, then T is open.

Corollary 5.6.2. Let X, Y be Banach spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$. If T is a bijection, then $T^{-1} \in L(X, Y)$.

Definition 5.6.3. Let X, Y be sets and $f : X \rightarrow Y$. We define the **graph of f** , $\Gamma(f)$, by $\Gamma(f) = \{(x, y) \in X \times Y : f(x) = y\}$.

Theorem 5.6.4. Let X, Y be Banach spaces and $T : X \rightarrow Y$ a linear map. If $\Gamma(T)$ is closed, then $T \in L(X, Y)$.

Note 5.6.5. We recall that $\Gamma(T)$ is closed iff for each $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$, $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$, $x_n \rightarrow x$ and $T(x_n) \rightarrow y$ implies that $T(x) = y$.

Theorem 5.6.6. Let X, Y be Banach spaces and $S \subset L(X, Y)$. If for each $x \in X$,

$$\sup_{T \in S} \|Tx\| < \infty$$

then

$$\sup_{T \in S} \|T\| < \infty$$

Exercise 5.6.7. Let μ be counting measure on $(\mathbb{N}, \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N}))$. Define $h : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ and ν on $(\mathbb{N}, \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N}))$ by $h(n) = n$ and $d\nu = h d\mu$. Define $X = L^1(\nu)$ and $Y = L^1(\mu)$. Equip both X and Y with the L^1 norm with respect to μ .

- (1) We have that X is a proper subspace of Y and therefore X is not complete.
- (2) Define $T : X \rightarrow Y$ by $Tf(n) = nf(n)$. Then T is linear, $\Gamma(T)$ is closed, and T is unbounded.
- (3) Define $S : Y \rightarrow X$ by $Sg(n) = \frac{1}{n}g(n)$. Then $S \in L(Y, X)$, S is surjective and S is not open.

Proof.

- (1) Note that for each $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \|f\|_{\mu,1} &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |f(n)| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n|f(n)| \\ &= \|f\|_{\nu,1} \end{aligned}$$

Hence X is a subspace of Y . Define $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $f(n) = \frac{1}{n^2}$. Then

$$\|f\|_{\mu,1} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} < \infty$$

So $f \in Y$. However

$$\|f\|_{\nu,1} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty$$

So $f \notin X$. Thus X is a proper subspace of Y . Let $g \in Y$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Since the simple functions are dense in $L^1(\mu)$, there exists $\phi \in L^1(\mu)$ such that ϕ is simple and $\|g - \phi\|_{\mu,1} < \epsilon$. Then there exist $(c_i)_{i=1}^k \subset \mathbb{C}$ and $(E_i)_{i=1}^k \subset \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N})$ such that for each $i, j \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$, E_i is finite, $i \neq j$ implies that $E_i \cap E_j = \emptyset$ and

$$\phi = \sum_{i=1}^k c_i \chi_{E_i}$$

Define $c = \max\{|c_i| : i = 1, 2, \dots, k\}$ and $m = \max \left[\bigcup_{i=1}^k E_i \right]$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|\phi\|_{\nu,1} &= \sum_{n=1}^m n |\phi(n)| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^m mc \\ &= cm^2 \\ &< \infty \end{aligned}$$

Hence $\phi \in X$ and X is dense in Y . Since X is a dense, proper subspace, it is not closed. Since Y is complete and $X \subset Y$ is not closed, we have that X is not complete.

- (2) Clearly T is linear. Let $(f_j)_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$, $f \in X$ and $g \in Y$. Suppose that $f_j \xrightarrow{L^1(\mu)} f$ and $Tf_j \xrightarrow{L^1(\mu)} g$.

Note that for each $j \in \mathbb{N}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$|f_j(n) - f(n)| \leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |f_j(n) - f(n)| = \|f_j - f\|_{\mu,1}$$

and

$$|nf_j(n) - g(n)| \leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |nf_j(n) - g(n)| = \|Tf_j - g\|_{\mu,1}$$

Thus for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $f_j(n) \xrightarrow{j} f(n)$ and $nf_j(n) \xrightarrow{j} g(n)$. This implies that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $nf(n) = g(n)$. Thus $Tf = g$ which implies that $\Gamma(T)$ is closed. Suppose, for the sake of contradiction, that T is bounded. Then there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $f \in X$, $\|Tf\|_{\mu,1} \leq C\|f\|_{\mu,1}$. Choose $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $n > C$. Define $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $f = \chi_{\{n\}}$. As established above, $S^+ \subset L^1(\mu)$. Then $\|f\|_{\mu,1} = 1$ and

$$\begin{aligned} \|Tf\|_{\mu,1} &= n \\ &> C \\ &= C\|f\|_{\mu,1} \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction. So T is unbounded.

(3) Clearly S is linear. Let $g \in Y$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|Sg\|_{\mu,1} &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} |g(n)| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |g(n)| \\ &= \|g\|_{\mu,1}\end{aligned}$$

So S is bounded and $\|S\| \leq 1$. Thus $S \in L(Y, X)$. Let $f \in X$. Define $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $g(n) = nf(n)$. By definition, $g \in Y$ and we have that

$$\begin{aligned}Sg(n) &= \frac{1}{n} g(n) \\ &= f(n)\end{aligned}$$

Hence $Sg = f$ and thus S is surjective. Let $g \in Y$. Suppose that $Sg = 0$. Then

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} |g(n)| = \|Sg\| = 0$$

Thus for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $g(n) = 0$. Hence $\ker S = \{0\}$ and S is injective. Note that for each $A \subset Y$, $S(A) = T^{-1}(A)$. If S is open, then T is continuous which as shown above is a contradiction. So g is not open. □

Exercise 5.6.8. Let $X = C^1([0, 1])$ and $Y = C([0, 1])$. Equip both X and Y with the uniform norm.

- (1) Then X is not complete
- (2) Define $T : X \rightarrow Y$ by $Tf = f'$. Then $\Gamma(T)$ is closed and T is not bounded.

Proof. (1) Recall that for each $a, b \geq 0$ and $p \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$(a^{\frac{1}{p}} + b^{\frac{1}{p}})^p = \sum_{n=0}^p \binom{p}{n} a^{\frac{n}{p}} b^{\frac{p-n}{p}} \geq a + b$$

Thus $(a + b)^{\frac{1}{p}} \leq a^{\frac{1}{p}} + b^{\frac{1}{p}}$.

For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, define $f_n : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $f_n(x) = \sqrt{(x - \frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{1}{n^2}}$. Then $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$. Define $f : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $f(x) = |x - \frac{1}{2}|$. Then $f \in Y \cap X^c$. Note that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $f \leq f_n$. Our observation above implies that for each $x \in X$,

$$\begin{aligned}f_n(x) &= \left[(x - \frac{1}{2})^2 + \frac{1}{n^2} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq |x - \frac{1}{2}| + \frac{1}{n}\end{aligned}$$

Thus $0 \leq f_n - f \leq \frac{1}{n}$. This implies that $f_n \xrightarrow{u} f$. Since $f \notin X$, X is not complete.

- (2) Let $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$, $f \in X$ and $g \in Y$. Suppose that $f_n \xrightarrow{u} f$ and $Tf_n \xrightarrow{u} g$. Let $x \in [0, 1]$. Then $f_n(x) \rightarrow f(x)$ and $f_n(0) \rightarrow f(0)$ and $f'_n \xrightarrow{u} g$. Applying the DCT to this sequence of integrable functions that converges uniformly to an integrable function on a finite measure space (a previous exercise) we have that

$$\begin{aligned} f_n(x) - f_n(0) &= \int_{[0,x]} f'_n dm \\ &\rightarrow \int_{[0,x]} g dm \end{aligned}$$

Since $f_n(x) - f_n(0) \rightarrow f(x) - f(0)$, we know that

$$f(x) - f(0) = \int_{[0,x]} g dm$$

Thus $Tf = g$ and $\Gamma(T)$ is closed.

By Exercise 5.2.3, T is not bounded. □

Exercise 5.6.9. Let X, Y be Banach spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$. Then $X/\ker T \cong T(X)$ iff $T(X)$ is closed.

Proof. Since X is a Banach space and T is continuous, we have that $\ker T$ is closed and $X/\ker T$ is a Banach space. Suppose that $X/\ker T \cong T(X)$. Then $T(X)$ is complete. Since Y is complete, this implies that $T(X)$ is closed.

Conversely Suppose that $T(X)$ is closed. Then $T(X)$ is complete. Define $S : X/\ker T \rightarrow T(X)$ by $S(x + \ker T) = T(x)$. A previous exercise tells us that the map $S : X/\ker T \rightarrow T(X)$ defined by $S(x + \ker T) = T(x)$ is a bounded linear bijection. Since $T(X)$ is complete and S is surjective, S^{-1} is bounded and thus S is an isomorphism. □

Exercise 5.6.10. Let X be a separable Banach space. Define $B_X = \{x \in X : \|x\| < 1\}$. Let $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset B_X$ a dense subset of the unit ball and μ the counting measure on $(\mathbb{N}, \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{N}))$. Define $T : L^1(\mu) \rightarrow X$ by

$$Tf = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n)x_n$$

Then

- (1) T is well defined and $T \in L(L^1(\mu), X)$
- (2) T is surjective
- (3) There exists a closed subspace $K \subset L^1(\mu)$ such that $L^1(\mu)/K \cong X$

Proof. (1) Let $f \in L^1(\mu)$. Since X is complete and

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|f(n)x_n\| &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |f(n)| \|x_n\| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |f(n)| \\ &< \infty \end{aligned}$$

we have that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n)x_n$ converges and thus $Tf \in X$. Hence T is well defined.

Clearly T is linear. Let $f \in L^1(\mu)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|Tf\| &= \left\| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n)x_n \right\| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|f(n)x_n\| \\ &\leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |f(n)| \\ &= \|f\|_1 \end{aligned}$$

So T is bounded with $\|T\| \leq 1$.

- (2) Let $x \in X$. Suppose that $\|x\| < 1$. Then $x \in B_X$. So there exists $n_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\|x - x_{n_1}\| < \frac{1}{2}$. Then $2(x - x_{n_1}) \in B_X$. Since for each $j \in \mathbb{N}$, $B_X \setminus (x_n)_{n=1}^j$ is dense in B_X , there exists $n_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $x_{n_2} \notin (x_n)_{n=1}^{n_1}$ and $\|2(x - x_{n_1}) - x_{n_2}\| < \frac{1}{2}$ which implies that $\|x - (x_{n_1} - \frac{1}{2}x_{n_2})\| < \frac{1}{4}$.

Proceed inductively to obtain a subsequence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that for each $k \geq 2$, $x_{n_k} \notin (x_n)_{n=1}^{n_{k-1}}$ and $\|x - \sum_{j=1}^k 2^{1-j}x_{n_j}\| < \frac{1}{2^k}$. Then $x = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 2^{1-k}x_{n_k}$.

Define $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $f = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 2^{1-k}\chi_{\{n_k\}}$. Then $\|f\|_1 = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 2^{1-k} < \infty$, so $f \in L^1(\mu)$ and $Tf = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 2^{1-k}x_{n_k} = x$. Now, suppose that $\|x\| \geq 1$, then $\frac{1}{2\|x\|}x \in B_X$.

The above argument shows that there exists $f \in L^1(\mu)$ such that $Tf = \frac{1}{2\|x\|}x$. Then

$$2\|x\|f \in L^1(\mu) \text{ and } T(2\|x\|f) = 2\|x\|Tf = x.$$

So for each $x \in X$, there exists $f \in L^1(\mu)$ such that $Tf = x$ and thus T is surjective.

- (3) Since X is a Banach space and T is surjective, the previous exercise implies that $L^1(\mu)/\ker T \cong X$.

□

5.7. Weak and Weak-* Topologies.

Exercise 5.7.1. Let X be a normed vector space and $x \in X$. Define $\hat{x} : X^* \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $\hat{x}(f) = f(x)$. Then $\hat{x} \in X^{**}$ and $\|\hat{x}\| = \|x\|$.

Hint: Hahn-Banach theorem

Proof. Let $f, g \in X^*$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. Then

$$\hat{x}(f + \lambda g) = (f + \lambda g)(x) = f(x) + \lambda g(x) = \hat{x}(f) + \lambda \hat{x}(g)$$

So \hat{x} is linear. For each $f \in X^*$,

$$|\hat{x}(f)| = |f(x)| \leq \|x\| \|f\|$$

Hence $\hat{x} \in X^{**}$ with $\|\hat{x}\| \leq \|x\|$. If $x = 0$, then $\hat{x} = 0$ and $\|\hat{x}\| = \|x\|$. Suppose that $x \neq 0$. Then a previous exercise implies that there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $\|F\| = 1$ and $F(x) = \|x\|$. Then we have that

$$\sup_{\substack{f \in X^* \\ \|f\|=1}} |\hat{x}(f)| = \sup_{\substack{f \in X^* \\ \|f\|=1}} |f(x)| \geq |F(x)| = \|x\|$$

Hence $\|\hat{x}\| = \|x\|$. □

Exercise 5.7.2. Let X be a normed vector space. Define $\phi : X \rightarrow X^{**}$ by $\phi(x) = \hat{x}$. Then ϕ is a linear isometry.

Proof. Let $x, y \in X$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. Then for each $f \in X^*$, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x + \lambda y)(f) &= \widehat{x + \lambda y}(f) \\ &= f(x + \lambda y) \\ &= f(x) + \lambda f(y) \\ &= \hat{x}(f) + \lambda \hat{y}(f) \\ &= \phi(x)(f) + \lambda \phi(y)(f) \end{aligned}$$

So $\phi(x + \lambda y) = \phi(x) + \lambda \phi(y)$ and ϕ is linear. The previous exercise tells us that

$$\begin{aligned} \|\phi(x) - \phi(y)\| &= \|\phi(x - y)\| \\ &= \|\widehat{x - y}\| = \|x - y\| \end{aligned}$$

So ϕ is an isometry. □

Definition 5.7.3. Let X be a normed vector space and define $\phi : X \rightarrow X^{**}$ as above. We define $\hat{X} = \phi(X) \subset X^{**}$. Since \hat{X} and X are isomorphic, we may identify X as a subset of X^{**} .

Definition 5.7.4. Let X be a normed vector space and define $\phi : X \rightarrow X^{**}$ as above. Then X is said to be **reflexive** if ϕ is surjective. In this case ϕ is then an isomorphism

Definition 5.7.5. Let X be a normed vector space. We define the **weak topology on X** to be the weak topology generated by X^* .

Definition 5.7.6. Let X be a normed vector space, $(x_\alpha)_\alpha \subset X$ and $x \in X$. Then $(x_\alpha)_\alpha$ is said to **converge weakly to x** , denoted $x_\alpha \xrightarrow{w} x$ if $(x_\alpha)_\alpha$ converges to x in the weak topology.

Exercise 5.7.7. Let X be a normed vector, $(x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset X$ a net and $x \in X$. Then $x_\alpha \rightarrow x$ iff for each $T \in X^*$, $Tx_\alpha \rightarrow Tx$.

Proof. Immediate by Exercise 4.3.11. □

Definition 5.7.8. Let X be a normed vector space. We define the **weak-* topology** on X^* to be the weak topology generated by \hat{X} .

5.8. Duality.

Definition 5.8.1. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$. Define the **adjoint** of T , denoted $T^* : Y^* \rightarrow X^*$, by $T^*(f) = f \circ T$.

Exercise 5.8.2. Let X, Y be normed vector spaces and $T \in L(X, Y)$.

- (1) Then $T^* \in L(Y^*, X^*)$.
- (2) Applying the result from (1) twice, we have that $T^{**} \in L(X^{**}, Y^{**})$. We have that for each $x \in X$, $T^{**}(\hat{x}) = \widehat{T(x)}$.
- (3) T^* is injective iff $T(X)$ is dense in Y .
- (4) If $T^*(Y^*)$ is dense in X^* , then T is injective. The converse is true if X is reflexive.

Proof.

- (1) Let $f \in Y^*$. Then $\|T^*(f)\| = \|f \circ T\| \leq \|T\|\|f\|$. So $T^* \in L(Y^*, X^*)$ with $\|T^*\| \leq \|T\|$.

- (2) Let $x \in X$. Let $f \in Y^*$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} T^{**}(\hat{x})(f) &= \hat{x} \circ T^*(f) \\ &= \hat{x}(T^*(f)) \\ &= \hat{x}(f \circ T) \\ &= f \circ T(x) \\ &= f(T(x)) \\ &= \widehat{T(x)}(f) \end{aligned}$$

Hence $T^{**}(\hat{x}) = \widehat{T(x)}$.

- (3) Suppose that $T(X)$ is not dense in Y . Then $\overline{T(X)} \neq Y$. So $T(X)$ is a proper closed subspace of Y and there exists $y \in Y$ such that $y \notin \overline{T(X)}$. By a previous exercise, there exists $f \in Y^*$ such that $f(y) = \|y + \overline{T(X)}\| \neq 0$, $\|f\| = 1$ and $f|_{\overline{T(X)}} = 0$. Let $x \in X$. Then $T^*(f)(x) = f \circ T(x) = 0$. Hence $T^*(f) = 0 = T^*(0)$. Since $f \neq 0$, T^* is not injective.

Now suppose that $T(X)$ is dense in Y . Let $f, g \in Y^*$. Define $h \in Y^*$ by $h = f - g$. Suppose that $T^*(f) = T^*(g)$. Then $T^*(h) = 0$. So for each $x \in X$, $h(T(x)) = 0$. Let $y \in Y$ and $\epsilon > 0$. By continuity, there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for each $y' \in Y$, if $\|y - y'\| < \delta$, then $\|h(y) - h(y')\| < \epsilon$. Since $T(X)$ is dense in Y , there exists $x \in X$ such that $\|y - T(x)\| < \delta$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \|h(y)\| &\leq \|h(y) - h(T(x))\| + \|h(T(x))\| \\ &= \|h(y) - h(T(x))\| \\ &< \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary, $\|h(y)\| = 0$. This implies that $h(y) = 0$ and therefore $f(y) = g(y)$. Since $y \in Y$ is arbitrary, $f = g$ and T^* is injective.

- (4) For the sake of contradiction, suppose that $T^*(Y^*)$ is dense in X^* and T is not injective. Then there exist $x_1, x_2 \in X$ such that $x_1 \neq x_2$ and $T(x_1) = T(x_2)$. Define $x = x_1 - x_2$. Then $x \neq 0$ and $T(x) = 0$. A previous exercise implies that there exists $F \in X^*$ such that $F(x) = \|x\| \neq 0$ and $\|F\| = 1$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $g \in Y^*$ such that $\|F - T^*(g)\| < \epsilon$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\| &= |F(x)| \\ &\leq |F(x) - T^*(g)(x)| + |T^*(g)(x)| \\ &< \epsilon\|x\| + |g(T(x))| \\ &= \epsilon\|x\| \end{aligned}$$

Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary, we have that $\|x\| = 0$ which is a contradiction. Hence if $T^*(Y^*)$ is dense in X^* , then T is injective.

Now, suppose that X is reflexive and T is injective. Let $\phi_1, \phi_2 \in X^{**}$. Suppose that $T^{**}(\phi_1) = T^{**}(\phi_2)$. Then $T^{**}(\phi_1 - \phi_2) = 0$. Since X is reflexive, there exist $x_1, x_2 \in X$ such that $\phi_1 = \hat{x}_1$ and $\phi_2 = \hat{x}_2$. Define $x = x_1 - x_2$. Then $T^{**}(\hat{x}) = 0$. So for each $f \in Y^*$,

$$\begin{aligned} T^{**}(\hat{x})(f) &= \hat{x} \circ T^*(f) \\ &= \hat{x}(T^*(f)) \\ &= \hat{x}(f \circ T) \\ &= f \circ T(x) \\ &= f(T(x)) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Suppose that $T(x) \neq 0$. Then a previous exercise implies that there exists $g \in Y^*$ such that $g(T(x)) = \|T(x)\| \neq 0$ and $\|g\| = 1$. This is a contradiction since $g(T(x)) = 0$. So $T(x) = 0$. Since T is injective, this implies that $x = 0$. Hence $\hat{x} = 0$ and thus $\phi_1 = \phi_2$. Thus T^{**} is injective. By (3), we have that $T^*(Y^*)$ is dense in X^* .

□

Exercise 5.8.3. Let X be a normed vector space. Then X is reflexive iff X^* is reflexive.

Proof. Suppose that X is reflexive. Let $\alpha \in X^{***}$. Define $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $f(x) = \alpha(\hat{x})$. Clearly f is linear and a previous exercise tells us that for each $x \in X$,

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x)| &\leq \|\alpha\| \|\hat{x}\| \\ &= \|\alpha\| \|x\| \end{aligned}$$

So $f \in X^*$. Let $\phi \in X^{**}$. Since X is reflexive, there exists $x \in X$ such that $\phi = \hat{x}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha(\phi) &= \alpha(\hat{x}) \\ &= f(x) \\ &= \hat{x}(f) \\ &= \hat{f}(\hat{x}) \\ &= \hat{f}(\phi)\end{aligned}$$

Hence $\alpha = \hat{f}$. Thus the map $X^* \rightarrow X^{***}$ given by $f \mapsto \hat{f}$ is surjective and so X^* is reflexive.

Conversely, suppose that X^* is reflexive. Since $\phi : X \rightarrow X^{**}$ given by $\phi(x) = \hat{x}$ is an isometry, $\hat{X} \subset X^{**}$ is closed. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that $\hat{X} \neq X^{**}$. Then there exists $\alpha \in X^{**}$ such that $\alpha \notin \hat{X}$. Thus there exists $F \in X^{***}$ such that $\|F\| = 1$, $F(\alpha) = \|\alpha + \hat{X}\| \neq 0$ and $F|_{\hat{X}} = 0$. Since X^* is reflexive, there exists $f \in X^*$ such that $F = \hat{f}$. A previous exercise tells us that $\|f\| = \|\hat{f}\| = \|F\| = 1$. Since for each $x \in X$, $f(x) = \hat{x}(f) = \hat{f}(\hat{x}) = F(\hat{x}) = 0$, we have that $f = 0$. Thus $\|f\| = 0$, a contradiction. So $\hat{X} = X^{**}$ and X is reflexive. \square

Definition 5.8.4. Let X be a normed vector space, $M \subset X$ and $N \subset X^*$. We define the **annihilator** of M and the annihilator of N , denoted by $M^\perp \subset X^*$ and ${}^\perp N \subset X$ respectively, by

$$\begin{aligned}M^\perp &= \{\phi \in X^* : \text{for each } x \in M, \phi(x) = 0\} \\ {}^\perp N &= \{x \in X : \text{for each } \phi \in N, \phi(x) = 0\}\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 5.8.5. Let X be a normed vector space, $M \subset X$ and $N \subset X^*$. Then

(1)

$$M^\perp = \bigcap_{x \in M} \ker \hat{x}$$

(2)

$${}^\perp N = \bigcap_{\phi \in N} \ker \phi$$

Proof.

(1)

$$\begin{aligned}M^\perp &= \{\phi \in X^* : \text{for each } x \in M, \phi(x) = 0\} \\ &= \bigcap_{x \in M} \{\phi \in X^* : \phi(x) = 0\} \\ &= \bigcap_{x \in M} \{\phi \in X^* : \hat{x}(\phi) = 0\} \\ &= \bigcap_{x \in M} \ker \hat{x}\end{aligned}$$

(2)

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^\perp N &= \{x \in X : \text{for each } \phi \in N, \phi(x) = 0\} \\
&= \bigcap_{\phi \in N} \{x \in X : \phi(x) = 0\} \\
&= \bigcap_{\phi \in N} \ker \phi
\end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 5.8.6. Let X be a normed vector space, $M \subset X$ and $N \subset X^*$. Then

- (1) M^\perp is weak-* closed
- (2) ${}^\perp N$ is closed

Proof.

- (1) Let $(\phi_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset M^\perp$ and $\phi \in X^*$. Suppose that $\phi_n \xrightarrow{w^*} \phi$. Then for each $x \in X$, $\phi_n(x) \rightarrow \phi(x)$. Let $x \in M$. By definition, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\phi_n(x) = 0$. Thus $\phi_n(x) \rightarrow 0$ which implies that $\phi(x) = 0$ and $\phi \in \ker \hat{x}$. Since $x \in M$ is arbitrary,

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi &\in \bigcap_{x \in M} \ker \hat{x} \\
&= M^\perp
\end{aligned}$$

- (2) Let $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset {}^\perp N$ and $x \in X$. Suppose that $x_n \rightarrow x$. Let $\phi \in N$. Continuity implies that $\phi(x_n) \rightarrow \phi(x)$. By definition, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\phi(x_n) = 0$. Thus $\phi(x_n) \rightarrow 0$ which implies that $\phi(x) = 0$. So $x \in \ker \phi$. Since $\phi \in N$ is arbitrary,

$$\begin{aligned}
x &\in \bigcap_{\phi \in N} \ker \phi \\
&= {}^\perp N
\end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 5.8.7. Let X be a normed vector space, $M \subset X$ and $N \subset X^*$. Then

- (1) ${}^\perp(M^\perp) = \bar{M}$, i.e. the norm closure of M
- (2) $({}^\perp N)^\perp = \text{cl}_{w^*}(N)$, i.e. the weak-* closure of N .

Proof.

- (1) Let $x \in M$, then by definition, for each $\phi \in M^\perp$, $\phi(x) = 0$. Again by definition, $x \in {}^\perp(M^\perp)$. So $M \subset {}^\perp(M^\perp)$. Since ${}^\perp(M^\perp)$ is closed, $\bar{M} \subset {}^\perp(M^\perp)$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that ${}^\perp(M^\perp) \not\subset \bar{M}$. Then there exists $x \in {}^\perp(M^\perp)$ such that $x \notin \bar{M}$. Exercise 5.5.21 implies that there exists $\phi \in X^*$ such that $\phi|_{\bar{M}} = 0$, $\|\phi\| = 1$ and $\phi(x) = \|x + \bar{M}\| > 0$. By definition, $\phi \in M^\perp$. Since $\phi(x) \neq 0$, we have that $x \notin {}^\perp(M^\perp)$. This is a contradiction and so ${}^\perp(M^\perp) \subset \bar{M}$.

(2)

□

5.9. Compact Operators.

Definition 5.9.1.

5.10. Multilinear Maps.

Definition 5.10.1. Let X_1, \dots, X_n, Y be normed vector spaces and $T : \prod_{i=1}^n X_i \rightarrow Y$ multilinear. Then T is said to be **bounded** if there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $x_1, \dots, x_n \in X$,

$$\|T(x_1, \dots, x_n)\| \leq C\|x_1\| \cdots \|x_n\|$$

We define

$$L^n(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y) = \left\{ T : \prod_{i=1}^n X_i \rightarrow Y : T \text{ is multilinear and bounded} \right\}$$

If $X_1 = \dots = X_n = X$, we write $L^n(X, Y)$ in place of $L^n(X, \dots, X; Y)$. If $X_1 = \dots = X_n = Y = X$, we write $L^n(X)$.

Note 5.10.2. For the remainder of this section we will primarily consider $L^2(X_1, X_2; Y)$ to avoid notational clutter, but all results immediately generalize to $L^n(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y)$

Exercise 5.10.3. Let X_1, X_2 and Y be normed vector spaces and $T : X_1 \times X_2 \rightarrow Y$ bilinear. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1) T is continuous
- (2) T is continuous at $(0, 0)$
- (3) T is bounded

Proof.

- (1) \implies (2):

Trivial

- (2) \implies (3):

Suppose that T is continuous at $(0, 0)$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that T is not bounded. Then for each $C \geq 0$, there exist $(x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2$ such that $\|T(x_1, x_2)\| > C\|x_1\|\|x_2\|$. Hence there exist $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X_1$ and $(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X_2$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\|T(a_n, b_n)\| > n^2\|a_n\|\|b_n\|$. Hence for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\|a_n\|, \|b_n\| > 0$. Define

$$(a'_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X_1$$

and $(b'_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X_2$ by $a'_n = \frac{a_n}{n\|a_n\|}$ and $b'_n = \frac{b_n}{n\|b_n\|}$. Then $(a'_n, b'_n) \rightarrow (0, 0)$. Continuity implies that $T(a'_n, b'_n) \rightarrow 0$. By construction, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(a'_n, b'_n)\| &= \frac{1}{n^2\|a_n\|\|b_n\|} \|T(a_n, b_n)\| \\ &> \frac{n^2\|a_n\|\|b_n\|}{n^2\|a_n\|\|b_n\|} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction. So T is bounded.

- (3) \implies (1):

Suppose that T is bounded. Then there exists $C > 0$ such that for each $(x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2$, $\|T(x_1, x_2)\| \leq C\|x_1\|\|x_2\|$. Let $(a, b) \in X_1 \times X_2$ and $(a_n, b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X_1 \times X_2$.

Suppose that $(a_n, b_n) \rightarrow (a, b)$. Then $a_n \rightarrow a$, $b_n \rightarrow b$ and $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, $(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are bounded. So there exists $B \geq 0$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ $\|b_n\| \leq B$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(a_n, b_n) - T(a, b)\| &= \|T(a_n, b_n) - T(a, b_n) + T(a, b_n) - T(a, b)\| \\ &\leq \|T(a_n, b_n) - T(a, b_n)\| + \|T(a, b_n) - T(a, b)\| \\ &= \|T(a_n - a, b_n)\| + \|T(a, b_n - b)\| \\ &\leq C(\|a_n - a\|\|b_n\| + \|a\|\|b_n - b\|) \\ &\leq C(\|a_n - a\|B + \|a\|\|b_n - b\|) \\ &\rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus T is continuous. □

Definition 5.10.4. Let X_1, X_2 and Y be normed vector spaces and $T \in L^2(X_1, X_2; Y)$. We define the **operator norm** on $L^2(X_1, X_2; Y)$, denoted $\|\cdot\| : L^2(X_1, X_2; Y) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$, by

$$\|T\| = \inf\{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } (x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2, \|T(x_1, x_2)\| \leq C\|x_1\|\|x_2\|\}$$

Exercise 5.10.5. Let X_1, X_2 and Y be normed vector spaces. If $X_1 \neq \{0\}$ and $X_2 \neq \{0\}$, then the operator norm on $L(X, Y)$ is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} (1) \quad \|T\| &= \sup_{\|x_1\|=1, \|x_2\|=1} \|T(x_1, x_2)\| \\ (2) \quad \|T\| &= \sup_{x_1 \neq 0, x_2 \neq 0} \|x_1\|^{-1} \|x_2\|^{-1} \|T(x_1, x_2)\| \\ (3) \quad \|T\| &= \inf\{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } (x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2, \|T(x_1, x_2)\| \leq C\|x_1\|\|x_2\|\} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Since $X_1 \neq \{0\}$ and $X_2 \neq \{0\}$, the supremums in (1) and (2) are well defined. Let $T \in L^2(X_1, X_2; Y)$. Bilinearity of T implies that the sets over which the supremums are taken in (1) and (2) are the same. So (1) and (2) are equal.

Now, set

$$M = \sup_{\|x_1\|=1, \|x_2\|=1} \|T(x_1, x_2)\|$$

and

$$m = \inf\{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } (x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2, \|T(x_1, x_2)\| \leq C\|x_1\|\|x_2\|\}$$

Let $(x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2$. If $\|x_1\| = 0$ or $\|x_2\| = 0$, then $T(x_1, x_2) = 0$ and $\|T(x_1, x_2)\| \leq M\|x_1\|\|x_2\|$. Suppose that $\|x_1\| \neq 0$ and $\|x_2\| \neq 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(x_1, x_2)\| &= \left(\|T(\|x_1\|^{-1}x_1, \|x_2\|^{-1}x_2)\| \right) \|x_1\|\|x_2\| \\ &\leq M\|x_1\|\|x_2\| \end{aligned}$$

Hence $M \in \{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } x \in X, \|Tx\| \leq C\|x\|\}$ and $m \leq M$. Let $C \in \{C \geq 0 : \text{for each } (x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2, \|T(x_1, x_2)\| \leq C\|x_1\|\|x_2\|\}$. Suppose that $\|x_1\| = 1$ and $\|x_2\| = 1$. Then $\|T(x_1, x_2)\| \leq C\|x_1\|\|x_2\| = C$. So $M \leq C$. Therefore $M \leq m$. So $M = m$ and the supremum in (1) is the same as the infimum in (3). □

Exercise 5.10.6. Let X_1, X_2 and Y be normed vector spaces. Then $\|\cdot\| : L^2(X_1, X_2; Y) \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is a norm.

Proof. □

Exercise 5.10.7. Let X_1, X_2, Y be normed vector spaces and $T_1 \in L(X_1, L(X_2, Y))$. Define $T : X_1 \times X_2 \rightarrow Y$ by $T(x_1, x_2) = T_1(x_1)(x_2)$. Then $T \in L^2(X_1, X_2; Y)$.

Proof. It is straightforward to show that T is multilinear. For $x_1 \in X_1$ and $x_2 \in X_2$,

$$\begin{aligned} \|T(x_1, x_2)\| &= \|T_1(x_1)(x_2)\| \\ &\leq \|T_1(x_1)\| \|x_2\| \\ &\leq \|T_1\| \|x_1\| \|x_2\| \end{aligned}$$

So $T \in L^2(X_1, X_2; Y)$. □

Exercise 5.10.8. Let X_1, X_2, Y be normed vector spaces and $T \in L^2(X_1, X_2; Y)$. Define the map $T_1 : X_1 \rightarrow Y^{X_2}$ by $T_1(x_1)(\cdot) = T(x_1, \cdot)$. Then $T_1 \in L(X_1, L(X_2, Y))$.

Proof. Let $x_1 \in X_1$. By definition of T , $T_1(x_1)$ is linear. Since T is bounded, there exists $C \geq 0$ such that for each $a_1 \in X_1$, $a_2 \in X_2$, $T(a_1, a_2) \leq C\|a_1\|\|a_2\|$. Then for each $x_2 \in X_2$,

$$\begin{aligned} \|T_1(x_1)(x_2)\| &= \|T(x_1, x_2)\| \\ &\leq (C\|x_1\|)\|x_2\| \end{aligned}$$

So $T_1(x_1) \in L(X_2, Y)$ with $\|T_1(x_1)\| \leq C\|x_1\|$. Since $x_1 \in X_1$ was arbitrary, $T_1 : X_1 \rightarrow L(X_2, Y)$. By definition of T , T_1 is linear. The preceding argument tells us that for each $x_1 \in X_1$,

$$\|T_1(x_1)\| \leq C\|x_1\|$$

So $T_1 \in L(X_1, L(X_2, Y))$ with $\|T_1\| \leq C$. □

Exercise 5.10.9. Let X_1, X_2 be normed vector spaces. Define a map $\phi : L^2(X_1, X_2; Y) \rightarrow L(X_1, L(X_2, Y))$ by $\phi(T)(x_1)(x_2) = T(x_1, x_2)$. Then T is an isometric isomorphism.

Proof. □

Definition 5.10.10. Let X_1, X_2 be normed vector spaces, $\phi_1 \in X_1^*$ and $\phi_2 \in X_2^*$. Define $\phi_1 \otimes \phi_2 : X_1 \times X_2$ by $\phi_1 \otimes \phi_2(x_1, x_2) = \phi_1(x_1)\phi_2(x_2)$.

Exercise 5.10.11. Let X_1, X_2 be normed vector spaces, $\phi_1 \in X_1^*$ and $\phi_2 \in X_2^*$. Then $\phi_1 \otimes \phi_2 \in L^2(X_1, X_2; \mathbb{C})$.

Proof. Clear. □

Exercise 5.10.12. Let X_1, X_2 be normed vector spaces and $(x_1, x_2) \in X_1 \times X_2$. If for each $\phi_1 \in X_1^*$ and $\phi_2 \in X_2^*$, $\phi_1 \otimes \phi_2(x_1, x_2) = 0$, then $x_1 = 0$ or $x_2 = 0$.

Proof. Suppose that $x_1 \neq 0$ and $x_2 \neq 0$. The previous section implies that there exist $\phi_1 \in X_1^*$ and $\phi_2 \in X_2^*$ such that $\phi_1(x_1) = \|x_1\| \neq 0$ and $\phi_2(x_2) = \|x_2\| \neq 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_1 \otimes \phi_2(x_1, x_2) &= \phi_1(x_1)\phi_2(x_2) \\ &\neq 0 \end{aligned}$$

□

5.11. Banach Algebras.

Definition 5.11.1. Let X be a Banach space and an associative algebra. Then X is said to be a **Banach algebra** if for each $S, T \in X$, $\|ST\| \leq \|S\|\|T\|$.

Definition 5.11.2. Let X be a Banach algebra and $I \in X$. Then I is said to be an **identity** if for each $T \in X$, $IT = TI = T$.

Definition 5.11.3. Let X be a Banach algebra. and $I \in X$. Then I is said to be an **identity** if $I \neq 0$ and for each $T \in X$, $IT = TI = T$.

Definition 5.11.4. Let X be a Banach algebra. Then X is said to be **unital** if there exists $I \in X$ such that I is an identity.

Exercise 5.11.5. Let X be a unital Banach algebra. Then there exists a unique $I \in X$ such that I is an identity.

Proof. Clear. □

Note 5.11.6. We denote the unique identity element by I .

Definition 5.11.7. Let X be a unital Banach algebra and $T, S \in X$. Then S is said to be an **inverse** of T if $TS = ST = I$.

Definition 5.11.8. Let X be a unital Banach algebra and $T \in X$. Then T is said to be **invertible** if there exists $S \in X$ such that S is an inverse of T .

Exercise 5.11.9. Let X be a unital Banach algebra and $T \in X$. If T is invertible, then there exists a unique $S \in X$ such that S is an inverse of T .

Proof. Clear. □

Note 5.11.10. We denote the unique inverse of T by T^{-1} .

Exercise 5.11.11. Fundamental Example:

Let X be a Banach space. Then $GL(X)$ is a unital Banach algebra.

Proof. Clear. □

Definition 5.11.12. Let X be a unital Banach algebra. We define $GL(X) = \{T \in X : T \text{ is invertible}\}$.

Exercise 5.11.13. Let X be a unital Banach algebra. Then $GL(X)$ is a group.

Proof. Clear. □

Exercise 5.11.14. Let X be a unital Banach algebra. Then $1 \leq \|I\|$.

Proof. Since $I \neq 0$, $\|I\| \neq 0$. By definition,

$$\|I\| = \|II\| \leq \|I\|\|I\|$$

Hence $1 \leq \|I\|$. □

Exercise 5.11.15. Let X be a Banach algebra. Then multiplication is continuous.

Proof. Let $(S_1, T_1) \in X \times X$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \min\{\frac{\epsilon}{2(\|S_1\| + \|T_1\| + 1)}, \frac{\sqrt{\epsilon}}{\sqrt{2}}\}$. Let $(S_2, T_2) \in X \times X$. Suppose that

$$\|(S_1, T_1) - (S_2, T_2)\| = \max\{\|S_1 - S_2\|, \|T_1 - T_2\|\} < \delta$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|S_1T_1 - S_2T_2\| &= \|S_1T_1 - S_2T_1 + S_2T_1 - S_2T_2\| \\ &\leq \|S_1 - S_2\|\|T_1\| + \|S_2\|\|T_1 - T_2\| \\ &\leq \|S_1 - S_2\|\|T_1\| + (\|S_1 - S_2\| + \|S_1\|)\|T_1 - T_2\| \\ &\leq \delta\|T_1\| + (\delta + \|S_1\|)\delta \\ &= \delta(\|S_1\| + \|T_1\|) + \delta^2 \\ &< \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \\ &= \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 5.11.16. Let X be a unital Banach algebra. Then

- (1) For each $T \in X$, if $\|I - T\| < 1$, then $T \in GL(X)$ and

$$T^{-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (I - T)^n$$

- (2) For each $S, T \in X$, if $S \in GL(X)$ and $\|S - T\| < \|S^{-1}\|^{-1}$, then $T \in GL(X)$.
 (3) $GL(X)$ is open.

Proof.

- (1) Let $T \in X$. Suppose that $\|I - T\| < 1$. Then

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \|(I - T)^n\| \leq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \|I - T\|^n < \infty$$

Since X is a complete, $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (I - T)^n$ converges in X .

Define $(S_k)_{k=0}^{\infty} \subset X$ and $S \in X$ by $S_k = \sum_{n=0}^k (I - T)^n$ and

$S = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (I - T)^n$. Then for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$\begin{aligned} S_kT &= S_k - S_k(I - T) \\ &= (I - T)^0 - (I - T)^{k+1} \\ &= I - (I - T)^{k+1} \end{aligned}$$

and $\|S_kT - I\| \leq \|I - T\|^{k+1}$. Since multiplication on Banach algebras is continuous, we have that

$$ST = (\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} S_k)T = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} S_kT = I$$

Similarly $TS = I$. Thus $T \in GL(X)$ and $T^{-1} = S \in X$.

(2) Let $S, T \in X$. Suppose that $S \in GL(X)$ and $\|S - T\| < \|S^{-1}\|^{-1}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|I - S^{-1}T\| &= \|S^{-1}(S - T)\| \\ &\leq \|S^{-1}\|\|S - T\| \\ &< 1\end{aligned}$$

So $S^{-1}T \in GL(X)$. Thus $T = S(S^{-1}T) \in GL(X)$.

(3) Let $T \in GL(X)$. Choose $\delta = \|T^{-1}\|^{-1}$. By (2), $B(T, \delta) \subset GL(X)$.

□

6. HILBERT SPACES

6.1. Introduction.

Definition 6.1.1. Let H be a vector space and $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Then $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ is said to be an **inner product** on H if for each $x, y, z \in H$ and $c \in \mathbb{C}$

- (1) $\langle x, y + cz \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle + c\langle x, z \rangle$
- (2) $\langle x, y \rangle = \langle y, x \rangle^*$
- (3) $\langle x, x \rangle \geq 0$
- (4) if $\langle x, x \rangle = 0$, then $x = 0$.

Note 6.1.2. In mathematics, inner products are conventionally defined to be linear in the first argument. However, in my opinion, the convention in physics of defining inner products to be linear in the second argument makes more sense.

Exercise 6.1.3. Let H be an inner product space, $(x_j)_{j=1}^n, (y_j)_{j=1}^n \subset H$ and $(\alpha_j)_{j=1}^n, (\beta_j)_{j=1}^n \subset \mathbb{C}$. Then

$$\left\langle \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i x_i, \sum_{j=1}^n \beta_j y_j \right\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_i^* \beta_j \langle x_i, y_j \rangle$$

Proof. Clear. □

Definition 6.1.4. Let H be an inner product space. Define the **induced norm**, denoted $\| \cdot \| : H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$, by

$$\|x\| = \langle x, x \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

Exercise 6.1.5. Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality

Let H be an inner product space. Then for each $x, y \in H$, $|\langle x, y \rangle| \leq \|x\| \|y\|$ and $|\langle x, y \rangle| = \|x\| \|y\|$ iff $x \in \text{span}(y)$.

Hint: For $x, y \in H$, put $z = \text{sgn} \langle x, y \rangle^* y$ and Consider $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ defined by $f(t) = \|x - tz\|^2$

Proof. Let $x, y \in H$. If $y = 0$, then the claim holds trivially. Suppose that $y \neq 0$. Put $z = \text{sgn} \langle x, y \rangle^* y$. So $\langle x, z \rangle = |\langle x, y \rangle|$ and $\|z\| = \|y\|$. Define $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by

$$f(t) = \|x - tz\|^2$$

. Then for each $t \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq f(t) \\ &= \|x - tz\|^2 \\ &= \|x\|^2 + |t|^2 \|z\|^2 - 2 \text{Re}(t \langle x, z \rangle) \\ &= \|x\|^2 + t^2 \|y\|^2 - 2t |\langle x, y \rangle| \end{aligned}$$

Thus f is a quadratic with a minimum at $t_0 = \frac{|\langle x, y \rangle|}{\|y\|^2}$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq f(t_0) \\ &= \|x\|^2 + \frac{|\langle x, y \rangle|}{\|y\|^2} - 2 \frac{|\langle x, y \rangle|}{\|y\|^2} \\ &= \|x\|^2 - \frac{|\langle x, y \rangle|}{\|y\|^2} \end{aligned}$$

Which implies that

$$|\langle x, y \rangle|^2 \leq \|x\|^2 \|y\|^2$$

and hence the claim holds. Clearly if $x \in \text{span}(y)$, then equality holds. Conversely, if equality holds, then $x - z = 0$ which implies that $x \in \text{span}(y)$. \square

Exercise 6.1.6. Let H be an inner product space. Then the induced norm, $\|\cdot\| : H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$, is a norm.

Proof. Let $x, y \in H$ and $c \in \mathbb{C}$. Then

- (1) By definition, if $\|x\| = 0$, then $\langle x, x \rangle = 0$, which implies that $x = 0$.
- (2) Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \|cx\|^2 &= \langle cx, cx \rangle \\ &= c * c \langle x, x \rangle \\ &= |c|^2 \|x\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

So $\|cx\| = |c| \|x\|$

- (3) The Cauchy-Schwarz inequality implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \|x + y\|^2 &= \|x\|^2 + \|y\|^2 + 2 \text{Re}(\langle x, y \rangle) \\ &\leq \|x\|^2 + \|y\|^2 + 2|\langle x, y \rangle| \\ &\leq \|x\|^2 + \|y\|^2 + 2\|x\| \|y\| \\ &= (\|x\| + \|y\|)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Hence $\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\|$.

\square

Definition 6.1.7. Let H be an inner product space, $x, y \in H$ and $S \subset H$. Then

- (1) x and y are said to be **orthogonal** if $\langle x, y \rangle = 0$.
- (2) S is said to be **orthogonal** if for each $x, y \in S$, x, y are orthogonal.

Exercise 6.1.8. (Pythagorean theorem):

Let H be an inner product space and $(x_j)_{j=1}^n \subset H$ an orthogonal set. Then

$$\left\| \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \right\|^2 = \sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\|^2$$

Proof. We have that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left\| \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \right\|^2 &= \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^n x_i, \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \right\rangle \\
 &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n \langle x_i, x_j \rangle \\
 &= \sum_{j=1}^n \langle x_j, x_j \rangle \\
 &= \sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\|^2
 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 6.1.9. Let H be an inner product space and $S \subset H$. Suppose that $0 \notin S$. If S is orthogonal, then S is linearly independent.

Proof. Let $x_1, \dots, x_n \in S$ and $c_1, \dots, c_n \in \mathbb{C}$. Suppose that $\sum_{j=1}^n c_j x_j = 0$. Since $(c_j x_j)_{j=1}^n$ is orthogonal, the Pythagorean theorem implies that

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &= \left\| \sum_{i=1}^n c_i x_i \right\|^2 \\
 &= \sum_{j=1}^n |c_j|^2 \|x_j\|^2
 \end{aligned}$$

So for each $j \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, $c_j = 0$ and S is linearly independent. □

Definition 6.1.10. Let H be an inner product space and $S \subset H$. Then S is said to be **orthonormal** if S is orthogonal and for each $x \in S$, $\|x\| = 1$.

Exercise 6.1.11. Bessel's Inequality:

Let H be an inner product space and $S \subset H$. If S is orthonormal, then for each $x \in H$,

$$\sum_{u \in S} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2 \leq \|x\|^2$$

and in particular, $\{u \in S : \langle u, x \rangle \neq 0\}$ is countable.

Proof. Suppose that S is orthonormal. Let $x \in H$ and $F \subset S$ finite. Then the Pythagorean theorem implies that

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &\leq \left\| x - \sum_{u \in F} \langle u, x \rangle u \right\|^2 \\
 &= \|x\|^2 + \left\| \sum_{u \in F} \langle u, x \rangle u \right\|^2 - 2 \operatorname{Re} \left\langle x, \sum_{u \in F} \langle u, x \rangle u \right\rangle \\
 &= \|x\|^2 + \sum_{u \in F} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2 \|u\|^2 - 2 \sum_{u \in F} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2 \\
 &= \|x\|^2 - \sum_{u \in F} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2
 \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\sum_{u \in F} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2 \leq \|x\|^2$$

By definition of the sum,

$$\sum_{u \in S} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2 \leq \|x\|^2$$

Basic integration theory then tells us that $\{u \in S : \langle u, x \rangle \neq 0\}$ is countable. \square

Definition 6.1.12. Let H be an inner product space. Then H is said to be a **Hilbert space** if H is complete with respect to the induced norm on H .

Exercise 6.1.13. Let H be a Hilbert space and $S \subset H$. Suppose that S is orthonormal. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1) For each $x \in H$, if for each $u \in S$, $\langle u, x \rangle = 0$, then $x = 0$.
- (2) For each $x \in H$, there exist $(u_j)_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \subset S$ such that $x = \sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j$ and for each $u \notin (u_j)_{j \in \mathbb{N}}$, $\langle u, x \rangle = 0$.
- (3) For each $x \in H$, $\|x\|^2 = \sum_{u \in S} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2$.

Proof.

- (1) \implies (2):

Suppose that for each $x \in H$, if for each $u \in S$, $\langle u, x \rangle = 0$, then $x = 0$. Let $x \in H$. Put $S_* = \{u \in S : \langle u, x \rangle \neq 0\}$. The previous exercise implies that S_* is countable. Write $S_* = (u_j)_{j=1}^\infty$. The previous exercise tells us that $\sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} |\langle u_j, x \rangle|^2 \leq \|x\|^2$ and hence converges. Thus for $\epsilon > 0$, there exist $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, $m, n \geq N$ implies that if $m < n$, then

$$\sum_{j=m+1}^n |\langle u_j, x \rangle|^2 < \epsilon$$

Define $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset H$ by

$$y_n = \sum_{j=1}^n \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j$$

Then for each $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, $m, n \geq N$ implies that if $m < n$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \|y_n - y_m\|^2 &= \left\| \sum_{j=1}^n \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j - \sum_{j=1}^m \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j \right\|^2 \\ &= \left\| \sum_{j=m+1}^n \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j \right\|^2 \\ &= \sum_{j=m+1}^n |\langle u_j, x \rangle|^2 \\ &< \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

So $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy. Since H is complete, there exists $y \in H$ such that $y_n \rightarrow y$. By definition,

$$y = \sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j$$

Continuity of $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : H \times H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ implies that

(1) for each $u \in S \setminus S_*$,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle u, x - y \rangle &= \langle u, x \rangle - \langle u, y \rangle \\ &= \langle u, x \rangle - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \langle u, y_n \rangle \\ &= \langle u, x \rangle - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{j=1}^n \langle u_j, x \rangle \langle u, u_j \rangle \\ &= 0 - 0 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

(2) for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle u_k, x - y \rangle &= \langle u_k, x \rangle - \langle u_k, y \rangle \\ &= \langle u_k, x \rangle - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \langle u_k, y_n \rangle \\ &= \langle u_k, x \rangle - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{j=1}^n \langle u_j, x \rangle \langle u_k, u_j \rangle \\ &= \langle u_k, x \rangle - \langle u_k, x \rangle \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So for each $u \in S$, $\langle u, x - y \rangle = 0$. By assumption, $x - y = 0$ and hence

$$x = \sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j$$

• (2) \implies (3):

Suppose that for each $x \in H$, there exist $(u_j)_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \subset S$ such that $x = \sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j$ and

for each $u \notin (u_j)_{j \in \mathbb{N}}$, $\langle u, x \rangle = 0$. Then continuity of $\|\cdot\| : H \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\|^2 &= \left\| \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{j=1}^n \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j \right\|^2 \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\| \sum_{j=1}^n \langle u_j, x \rangle u_j \right\|^2 \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{j=1}^n |\langle u_j, x \rangle|^2 \\ &= \sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} |\langle u_j, x \rangle|^2 \\ &= \sum_{u \in S} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2 \end{aligned}$$

• (3) \implies (4):

Suppose that for each $x \in H$, $\|x\|^2 = \sum_{u \in S} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2$. Let $x \in H$. Suppose that for each $u \in S$, $\langle u, x \rangle = 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\|^2 &= \sum_{u \in S} |\langle u, x \rangle|^2 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So $x = 0$

□

Definition 6.1.14. Let H be a Hilbert space and $S \subset H$. Then S is said to be an **orthonormal basis of H** if

- (1) S is orthonormal
- (2) for each $x \in H$, if for each $u \in S$, $\langle u, x \rangle = 0$, then $x = 0$

6.2. Operators and Functionals.

Definition 6.2.1. (Adjoint of an Operator):

Let H be a Hilbert space and $A, B \in L(H)$. Then B is said to be the **adjoint** of A if for each $x_1, x_2 \in H$,

$$\langle x_1, Ax_2 \rangle = \langle Bx_1, x_2 \rangle$$

In this case, we write

$$B = A^*$$

Note 6.2.2. In physics, the adjoint of A is typically denoted by A^\dagger .

Exercise 6.2.3. Let H be a Hilbert space, $A, B \in L(H)$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, then

- (1) $(A^*)^* = A$
- (2) $(A + B)^* = A^* + B^*$
- (3) $(AB)^* = B^*A^*$
- (4) $(\lambda A)^* = \lambda^*A^*$
- (5) A and B commute iff A^* and B^* commute.

Proof. Let $x_1, x_2 \in H$. Then

(1)

$$\begin{aligned} \langle Ax_1, x_2 \rangle &= \langle x_2, Ax_1 \rangle^* \\ &= \langle A^*x_2, x_1 \rangle^* \quad (\text{by definition}) \\ &= \langle x_1, A^*x_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

(2)

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x_1, (A + B)x_2 \rangle &= \langle x_1, Ax_2 \rangle + \langle x_1, Bx_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle A^*x_1, x_2 \rangle + \langle B^*x_1, x_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle (A^* + B^*)x_1, x_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

(3)

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x_1, ABx_2 \rangle &= \langle A^*x_1, Bx_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle B^*A^*x_1, x_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

(4)

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x_1, \lambda Ax_2 \rangle &= \lambda \langle x_1, Ax_2 \rangle \\ &= \lambda \langle A^*x_1, x_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle \lambda^*A^*x_1, x_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

(5) If A and B commute, then

$$\begin{aligned} A^*B^* &= (BA)^* \\ &= (AB)^* \\ &= B^*A^* \end{aligned}$$

Conversely, if A^* and B^* commute then

$$\begin{aligned} AB &= (B^*A^*)^* \\ &= (A^*B^*)^* \\ &= BA \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 6.2.4. Let H be a Hilbert space and $Q \in L(H)$. Then Q is said to be **self-adjoint** if

$$Q = Q^*$$

Exercise 6.2.5. Let H be a Hilbert space and $Q \in L(H)$. If Q is a self-adjoint then

- (1) the eigenvalues of Q are real.
- (2) the eigenvectors of Q corresponding to distinct eigenvalues are orthogonal.

Proof. Suppose that Q is self-adjoint.

- (1) Let λ be an eigenvalue of Q with corresponding eigenvector x . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda \langle x, x \rangle &= \langle x, Qx \rangle \\ &= \langle Qx, x \rangle \\ &= \lambda^* \langle x, x \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\lambda = \lambda^*$ and is real

- (2) Let λ_1 and λ_2 be eigenvalues of Q with corresponding eigenvectors x_1 and x_2 . Suppose that $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_2 \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle &= \langle x_1, Qx_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle Qx_1, x_2 \rangle \\ &= \lambda_1 \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

So $(\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle = 0$. Which implies that $\langle x_1, x_2 \rangle = 0$

□

Exercise 6.2.6. Let H be a Hilbert space, $A, B \in L(H)$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$. Suppose that A, B are self-adjoint. If A and B commute and then λAB is self-adjoint.

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} (\lambda AB)^* &= \lambda^* (AB)^* \\ &= \lambda B^* A^* \\ &= \lambda BA \\ &= \lambda AB \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 6.2.7. (Adjoint of a Vector):

Let H be a Hilbert space and $x \in H$. We define the **adjoint** of x , denoted $x^* \in H^*$, by $x^*y = \langle x, y \rangle$.

Note 6.2.8. In mathematics, where linearity of the inner product is in the first argument, x^* is typically referred to by $u_x \in H^*$ where $u_x(y) = \langle y, x \rangle$. In physics, where the inner product with linearity in the second argument, $x^*\phi$ is usually written in the so-called “bra-ket” notation as $\langle x|\phi \rangle$ which works smoothly since it aligns with the linearity of $u_x(\phi_1 + \lambda\phi_2)$ and the conjugate-linearity of $u_{x_1 + \lambda x_2}(\phi)$. In this way, it generalizes the notation for $\langle x, y \rangle = x^T y$ for \mathbb{R}^n to $\langle x, y \rangle = x^* y$ for \mathbb{C}^n .

Exercise 6.2.9. Let H be a Hilbert space, $x, y \in H$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. Then

- (1) $(x + y)^* = x^* + y^*$
- (2) $(\lambda x)^* = \lambda^* x^*$

Proof. Clear. □

Definition 6.2.10. Let H be a Hilbert space, $x, y \in H$ and $A \in L(H)$. We define

- (1) $x^* A \in H^*$ by $(x^* A)y = x^*(Ay)$
- (2) $xy^* \in L(H)$ by $(xy^*)z = (y^* z)x$

Exercise 6.2.11. Let H be a Hilbert space, $A \in L(H)$ and $x \in H$. Then

$$(Ax)^* = x^* A^*$$

Proof. Let $y \in H$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (Ax)^* y &= \langle Ax, y \rangle \\ &= \langle x, A^* y \rangle \\ &= x^* A^* y \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 6.2.12. (Commutator):

Let H be a Hilbert space and $A, B \in L(H)$. The **commutator** of A and B , denoted $[A, B]$, is defined by

$$[A, B] = AB - BA$$

Exercise 6.2.13. Let H be a Hilbert space and $A, B, C \in L(H)$. Then

- (1) $[AB, C] = A[B, C] + [A, C]B$
- (2) $[A, BC] = B[A, C] + [A, B]C$

Proof.

(1)

$$\begin{aligned} [AB, C] &= ABC - CAB \\ &= ABC - ACB + ACB - CAB \\ &= A(BC - CB) + (AC - CA)B \\ &= A[B, C] + [A, C]B \end{aligned}$$

(2) Similar to (1).

□

6.3. Tensor Products.

Note 6.3.1. This section assumes familiarity with the algebraic tensor product of two vector spaces. See section ??? of [1] for details.

Definition 6.3.2. Let X, Y and Z be Banach spaces and $\phi \in L^2(X, Y; Z)$. Then (Z, ϕ) is said to be a **tensor product** of X with Y if

- (1) $\text{span } \phi(X \times Y)$ is dense in Z
- (2) for each Banach space W and $\psi \in L^2(X, Y; W)$, there exists a unique $\psi' \in L(Z, W)$ such that $\psi' \circ \phi = \psi$, i.e. such that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times Y & \xrightarrow{\phi} & Z \\ & \searrow \psi & \downarrow \psi' \\ & & W \end{array}$$

If (Z, ϕ) is a tensor product of X with Y . We often write $Z = X \otimes Y$ and for each $x \in X$, $y \in Y$, we often write $\phi(x, y) = x \otimes y$.

Exercise 6.3.3. Let X and Y be Banach spaces, $U \subset X$ and $V \subset Y$. Set $W = \{u \otimes v : u \in U \text{ and } v \in V\} \subset X \otimes Y$. If U and V are linearly independent, then W is linearly independent.

Hint: For $\phi \in X^*$, $\psi \in Y^*$, define $T \in L^2(X, Y; \mathbb{C})$ by $T(x, y) = \phi(x)\psi(y)$.

Proof. Let $w = \sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} u \otimes v$. Suppose that $w = 0$. Let $\phi \in X^*$ and $\psi \in Y^*$. Define $T \in L^2(X, Y; \mathbb{C})$ by $T(x, y) = \phi(x)\psi(y)$. By definition of the tensor product, there exists a unique $T' \in L(X \otimes Y, \mathbb{C})$ such that for each $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$, $T'(x \otimes y) = T(x, y)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= T'(w) \\ &= T'\left(\sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} u \otimes v\right) \\ &= \sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} T'(u \otimes v) \\ &= \sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} T(u, v) \\ &= \sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} \phi(u) \psi(v) \\ &= \phi\left(\sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} \psi(v) u\right) \end{aligned}$$

Since $\phi \in X^*$ is arbitrary, a previous exercise in the section on linear functionals implies that

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \sum_{u \in U} \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} \psi(v) u \\ &= \sum_{u \in U} \left(\sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} \psi(v) \right) u \end{aligned}$$

Linear independence of U implies that for each $u \in U$,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} \psi(v) \\ &= \psi \left(\sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} v \right) \end{aligned}$$

Since $\psi \in Y^*$ is arbitrary, for each $u \in U$,

$$\sum_{v \in V} \lambda_{u,v} v = 0$$

Linear independence of V implies that for each $u \in U, v \in V, \lambda_{u,v} = 0$. Hence W is linearly independent. \square

Exercise 6.3.4. Uniqueness:

Let X, Y and Z be Banach spaces and $\phi \in L^2(X, Y; Z)$. Suppose that (Z, ϕ) is a tensor product of X with Y . Then (Z, ϕ) is unique up to isomorphism.

Proof. Let W be a Banach space and $\psi \in L^2(X, Y; W)$. Suppose that (W, ψ) is a tensor product of X with Y . Since (Z, ϕ) is a tensor product of X with Y , there exists a unique $\psi' \in L(Z, W)$ such that $\psi' \circ \phi = \psi$. Since (W, ψ) is a tensor product of X with Y , there exists a unique $\phi' \in L(W, Z)$ such that $\phi' \circ \psi = \phi$. Thus the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & W \\ & \nearrow \psi & \downarrow \phi' \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{\phi} & Z \\ & \searrow \psi & \downarrow \psi' \\ & & W \end{array}$$

On the other hand, since (W, ψ) is a tensor product of X with Y , there exists a unique $\Psi \in L(W)$ such that $\Psi \circ \psi = \psi$. Thus the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times Y & \xrightarrow{\psi} & W \\ & \searrow \psi & \downarrow \Psi \\ & & W \end{array}$$

Since $I_W \in L(W)$ and $I_W \circ \psi = \psi$, uniqueness of Ψ implies that $\Psi = I_W$. From the first diagram, we see that $\psi' \circ \phi'$ satisfies $(\psi' \circ \phi') \circ \psi = \psi$. Since $\psi' \circ \phi' \in L(W)$, uniqueness of Ψ implies that $\Psi = \psi' \circ \phi'$. Thus $\psi' \circ \phi' = I_W$.

Similarly, we could have initially considered the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & Z \\ & \nearrow \phi & \downarrow \psi' \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{\psi} & W \\ & \searrow \phi & \downarrow \phi' \\ & & Z \end{array}$$

Playing a similar game, we could use the fact that there exists a unique $\Phi \in L(Z)$ such that $\Phi \circ \phi = \phi$ to obtain the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times Y & \xrightarrow{\phi} & Z \\ & \searrow \phi & \downarrow \Phi \\ & & Z \end{array}$$

As before, uniqueness enables us to conclude that $\phi' \circ \psi' = I_Z$. Thus ψ' and ϕ' are isomorphisms and $Z \cong W$. \square

Note 6.3.5. The following definitions and exercises will cover the explicit construction of a tensor product of Banach spaces.

Definition 6.3.6. Let X and Y be Banach spaces. Define $X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y = \text{span}\{x \otimes y : x \in X \text{ and } y \in Y\}$ to be the algebraic tensor product of X with Y (see section ??? of [1] for details).

Exercise 6.3.7. Let X and Y be Banach spaces and $x \otimes y \in X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y$. If for each $\phi \in X^*$ and $\psi \in Y^*$, $\phi \otimes \psi(x, y) = 0$, then $x \otimes y = 0$.

Proof. The previous section tells us that for each $\phi \in X^*$ and $\psi \in Y^*$, $\phi \otimes \psi(x, y) = 0$, then $x = 0$ or $y = 0$. This implies that $x \otimes y = 0$. \square

Definition 6.3.8. The Projective Norm:

Define $\|\cdot\|_\pi : X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by

$$\|u\|_\pi = \inf \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| : (x_j)_{j=1}^n \subset X, (y_j)_{j=1}^n \subset Y \text{ and } u = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j \right\}$$

Exercise 6.3.9. Let X and Y be Banach spaces. Then $\|\cdot\|_\pi : X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ is a norm on $X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y$.

Proof.

- Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, $u \in X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y$. If $\lambda = 0$, then $\lambda u = 0u = 0 \otimes 0$ and clearly $\|\lambda u\|_\pi = 0 = |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi$. Suppose that $\lambda \neq 0$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exist $(x_j)_{j=1}^n \subset X$ and $(y_j)_{j=1}^n \subset Y$ such that $u = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j$ and $\sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| < \|u\|_\pi + \epsilon/|\lambda|$. Then $\lambda u = \sum_{j=1}^n (\lambda x_j) \otimes y_j$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \|\lambda u\|_\pi &\leq \sum_{j=1}^n \|\lambda x_j\| \|y_j\| \\ &\leq |\lambda| \sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| \\ &< |\lambda| \left(\|u\|_\pi + \frac{\epsilon}{|\lambda|} \right) \\ &= |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi + \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary, $\|\lambda u\|_\pi \leq |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that $\|\lambda u\|_\pi < |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi$. Then there exists $(x_j)_{j=1}^n \subset X$ and $(y_j)_{j=1}^n \subset Y$ such that $\lambda u = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j$ and $\sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| < |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi$. Hence $u = \sum_{j=1}^n (\lambda^{-1} x_j) \otimes y_j$. This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_\pi &\leq \sum_{j=1}^n \|\lambda^{-1} x_j\| \|y_j\| \\ &= |\lambda|^{-1} \sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| \\ &< |\lambda|^{-1} |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi \\ &= \|u\|_\pi \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction. Therefore $\|\lambda u\|_\pi \geq |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi$ which implies that $\|\lambda u\|_\pi = |\lambda| \|u\|_\pi$

- Let $u, v \in X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exist $(x_j)_{j=1}^n, (a_k)_{k=1}^m \subset X$ and $(y_j)_{j=1}^n, (b_k)_{k=1}^m \subset Y$ such that $u = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j$, $v = \sum_{k=1}^m a_k \otimes b_k$, $\sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| < \|u\|_\pi + \epsilon/2$ and $\sum_{k=1}^m \|a_k\| \|b_k\| < \|v\|_\pi + \epsilon/2$. Then $u + v = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j + \sum_{k=1}^m a_k \otimes b_k$ which implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \|u + v\|_\pi &\leq \sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| + \sum_{k=1}^m \|a_k\| \|b_k\| \\ &< \|u\|_\pi + \epsilon/2 + \|v\|_\pi + \epsilon/2 \\ &= \|u\|_\pi + \|v\|_\pi + \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary, $\|u + v\|_\pi \leq \|u\|_\pi + \|v\|_\pi$.

- Let $u \in X \otimes^{\text{alg}} Y$. Suppose that $\|u\| = 0$. Let $\phi \in X^*$ and $\psi \in Y^*$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exist $(x_j)_{j=1}^n \subset X$ and $(y_j)_{j=1}^n \subset Y$ such that $u = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \otimes y_j$ and

$$\sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| < \frac{\epsilon}{\|\phi\| \|\psi\| + 1}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{j=1}^n |\phi \otimes \psi(x_j, y_j)| &= \sum_{j=1}^n |\phi(x_j)\psi(y_j)| \\
 &\leq \sum_{j=1}^n \|\phi\| \|x_j\| \|\psi\| \|y_j\| \\
 &= \|\phi\| \|\psi\| \sum_{j=1}^n \|x_j\| \|y_j\| \\
 &< \|\phi\| \|\psi\| \frac{\epsilon}{\|\phi\| \|\psi\| + 1} \\
 &< \epsilon
 \end{aligned}$$

Then for each $j \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, $|\phi \otimes \psi(x_j, y_j)| < \epsilon$. **FINISH!!!** Try using sequences and continuity and a common refinement of representation and averaging

□

Exercise 6.3.10. Existence:

Proof.

□

7. DIFFERENTIATION

7.1. The Gateaux Derivative.

Note 7.1.1. In this section, we assume all Banach spaces to be over \mathbb{R} .

Definition 7.1.2. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$, $x_0 \in A$ and $x \in X$. Then f is said to be

- (1) **right-hand-differentiable at x_0 in the direction x** if the limit

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t}$$

exists. If f is right-hand-differentiable at x_0 in the direction x , we define the **right-hand derivative** of f at x_0 in the direction x , denoted by $d^+f(x_0; x)$, to be the above limit.

- (2) **left-hand-differentiable at x_0 in the direction x** if the limit

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t}$$

exists. If f is left-hand-differentiable at x_0 in the direction x , we define the **left-hand derivative** of f at x_0 in the direction x , denoted by $d^-f(x_0; x)$, to be the above limit.

- (3) **differentiable at x_0 in the direction x** if the limit

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t}$$

exists. If f is differentiable at x_0 in the direction x , we define the **derivative** of f at x_0 in the direction x , denoted by $df(x_0; x)$, to be the above limit.

Exercise 7.1.3. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $x_0 \in A$. Then $df(x_0; 0) = 0$.

Proof. Clear. □

Definition 7.1.4. The Gateaux Derivative:

Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. Then f is said to be

- (1) **right-hand Gateaux differentiable at x_0** if for each $x \in X$, $d^+f(x_0; x)$ exists. We define the **right-hand Gateaux derivative** of f at x_0 , denoted $d^+f(x_0) : X \rightarrow Y$, to be

$$d^+f(x_0)(x) = d^+f(x_0; x)$$

- (2) **left-hand Gateaux differentiable at x_0** if for each $x \in X$, $d^-f(x_0; x)$ exists. We define the **left-hand Gateaux derivative** of f at x_0 , denoted $d^-f(x_0) : X \rightarrow Y$, to be

$$d^-f(x_0)(x) = d^-f(x_0; x)$$

- (3) **Gateaux differentiable at x_0** if for each $x \in X$, $df(x_0; x)$ exists. We define the **Gateaux derivative** of f at x_0 , denoted $df(x_0) : X \rightarrow Y$, to be

$$df(x_0)(x) = df(x_0; x)$$

Definition 7.1.5. Let Y be a Banach space, $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ open and $f : A \rightarrow Y$. Then f is said to be **Gateaux differentiable** if for each $x \in A$, f is Gateaux differentiable at x . If f is Gateaux differentiable, we define $df : A \rightarrow Y^X$ by $x_0 \mapsto df(x_0)$.

Exercise 7.1.6. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f, g : A \rightarrow Y$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x_0 \in A$. If f, g are Gateaux differentiable at x_0 , then $f + \lambda g$ is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 and $d[f + \lambda g](x_0) = df(x_0) + \lambda dg(x_0)$.

Proof. Similar to the case of the derivative from Calc I. □

Exercise 7.1.7. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 . Then for each $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x \in X$,

$$df(x_0)(\lambda x) = \lambda df(x_0)(x)$$

Proof. Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0)(\lambda x) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + t\lambda x) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \lambda \frac{f(x_0 + t\lambda x) - f(x_0)}{\lambda t} \\ &= \lambda \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + t\lambda x) - f(x_0)}{\lambda t} \\ &= \lambda \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= \lambda df(x_0)(x) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.1.8. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$. If f is constant, then f is Gateaux differentiable and for each $x_0 \in A, x \in X$,

$$df(x_0)(x) = 0$$

Proof. Suppose that f is constant. Then there exists $c \in Y$ such that for each $x \in A$, $f(x) = c$. Let $x_0 \in A, x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0)(x) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{c - c}{t} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.1.9. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$. If f is linear, then f is Gateaux differentiable and for each $x_0 \in A, x \in X$,

$$df(x_0)(x) = f(x)$$

Proof. Suppose that f is linear. Let $x_0 \in A, x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0)(x) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0) + tf(x) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= f(x) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.1.10. There exist Banach spaces X, Y , and $f : X \rightarrow Y$ such that f is Gateaux differentiable and f is nowhere continuous.

Hint: use Exercise 7.1.9

Proof. Set $X = C^1([0, 1])$ and $Y = C([0, 1])$. Equip both X and Y with the sup norm. Define $T : X \rightarrow Y$ by $Tf = f'$. Then Exercise 5.2.3 implies that T is not bounded. Since T is linear, Exercise 7.1.9 implies that T is Gateaux differentiable. Since T is not bounded, Exercise 5.2.6 implies that T is not continuous at 0. Then Exercise 5.2.5 tells us that T is nowhere continuous. \square

Exercise 7.1.11. Set $A = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : y = -x^2 \text{ and } x \neq 0\}$. Define $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \setminus A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} 0 & (x, y) = (0, 0) \\ \frac{x^4 y}{x^6 + y^3} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Then f is Gateaux differentiable at $(0, 0)$ and f is not continuous at $(0, 0)$.

Hint: Consider the set $B = \{(x, x^2) : x \in \mathbb{R}\} \subset \mathbb{R}^2 \setminus A$.

Proof. \square

Exercise 7.1.12. Let Y be a Banach space, $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 . Then $df(x_0) \in L(\mathbb{R}, Y)$.

Proof. Let $x, y, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.

(1) The previous exercise implies

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0)(x + \lambda y) &= df(x_0)((x + \lambda y)1) \\ &= (x + \lambda y)df(x_0)(1) \\ &= xdf(x_0)(1) + \lambda ydf(x_0)(1) \\ &= df(x_0)(x) + \lambda df(x_0)(y) \end{aligned}$$

So $df(x_0) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow Y$ is linear.

(2) Since

$$\begin{aligned} \|df(x_0)(x)\| &= \|xdf(x_0)(1)\| \\ &= |x|\|df(x_0)(1)\| \end{aligned}$$

We have that $df(x_0) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow Y$ is bounded with $\|df(x_0)\| \leq \|df(x_0)(1)\|$. \square

Exercise 7.1.13. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $x_0 \in A$. If f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 and f has a local extremum at x_0 , then $df(x_0) = 0$.

Proof. Suppose that f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 and f has a local minimum point at x_0 . Then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that $B(x_0, \delta) \subset A$ and for each $y \in B(x_0, \delta)$, $f(x_0) \leq f(y)$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that $df(x_0) \neq 0$. Then there exists $x \in X$ such that $x \neq 0$ and $df(x_0)(x) \neq 0$.

First, suppose that $df(x_0)(x) < 0$. Choose $\epsilon = -df(x_0)(x) > 0$. Then there exists $t_0 > 0$ such that for each $t \in B^*(0, t_0)$, $x_0 + tx \in B(x_0, \delta)$ and

$$\left| \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} - df(x_0)(x) \right| < \epsilon$$

This implies that for each $t \in B^*(0, t_0)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} &< \epsilon + df(x_0)(x) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

and hence $f(x_0 + tx) < f(x_0)$, which is a contradiction.

Now, suppose that $df(x_0)(x) > 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0)(-x) &= -df(x_0)(x) \\ &< 0 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly to above, this implies that there exists $t_0 > 0$ such that for each $t \in B^*(0, t_0)$, $x_0 - tx \in B(x_0, \delta)$ and $f(x_0 - tx) < f(x_0)$ which is a contradiction. So $df(x_0)(x) = 0$ and $df(x_0) = 0$.

If f has a local maximum at x_0 , then $-f$ has a local minimum point at x_0 . Then

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0) &= -d[-f](x_0) \\ &= -0 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.1.14. Let X, Y, Z be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $B \subset Y$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$, $g : B \rightarrow Z$ and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that f is affine. If g is Gateaux differentiable at $f(x_0)$, then $g \circ f$ is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 and

$$d(g \circ f)(x_0)(x) = dg(f(x_0))(df(x_0)(x))$$

Proof. Suppose that g is Gateaux differentiable at $f(x_0)$. Since f is affine, there exists $h : A \rightarrow Y$ and $c \in Y$ such that $f = h + c$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0) &= dh(x_0) \\ &= h \end{aligned}$$

Let $x \in X$. Choose $\delta > 0$ such that for each $t \in B(0, \delta) \subset \mathbb{R}$, $f(x_0) + th(x) \in B$. Then for each $t \in B^*(0, \delta)$,

$$\begin{aligned} g \circ f(x_0 + tx) &= g\left(f(x_0) + t \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t}\right) \\ &= g(f(x_0) + th(x)) \end{aligned}$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} d(g \circ f)(x_0) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{g \circ f(x_0 + tx) - g(f(x_0))}{t} \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{g(f(x_0) + th(x)) - g(f(x_0))}{t} \\ &= dg(f(x_0))(h(x)) \\ &= dg(f(x_0))(df(x_0)(x)) \end{aligned}$$

□

7.2. The Frechet Derivative.

Exercise 7.2.1. Let X, Y be a normed vector spaces and $\phi : X \rightarrow Y$ linear. If $\phi(h) = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$, then $\phi = 0$.

Proof. Let $h_0 \in X$. If $h_0 = 0$, then $\phi(h_0) = 0$. Suppose that $h_0 \neq 0$. Define $(h_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ by

$$h_n = \frac{h_0}{n}$$

Then $h_n \rightarrow 0$. By continuity of ϕ and our initial assumption we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \|h_0\|^{-1}\phi(h_0) &= \phi\left(\frac{h_0}{\|h_0\|}\right) \\ &= \phi\left(\frac{h_n}{\|h_n\|}\right) \\ &= \frac{\phi(h_n)}{\|h_n\|} \\ &\rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

which implies that $\|h_0\|^{-1}\phi(h_0) = 0$. So $\phi(h_0) = 0$ and hence $\phi = 0$. \square

Exercise 7.2.2. Let X, Y be a normed vector spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that there exists $\phi : X \rightarrow Y$ such that ϕ is linear and

$$f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + \phi(h) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

then ϕ is unique.

Proof. Suppose that there exists $\psi : X \rightarrow Y$ such that ψ is linear and such that

$$f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + \psi(h) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

Then $\phi(h) - \psi(h) = o(h)$. Since $\phi - \psi$ is linear, the previous exercise implies that $\phi = \psi$. \square

Note 7.2.3. Recall that for Banach spaces X and Y , there isomorphic isometry

$$L(X, L(X, \dots, L(X, Y)) \dots) \rightarrow L^n(X, Y)$$

given by $\phi \mapsto \psi_\phi$ where

$$\psi_\phi(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \phi(x_1)(x_2), \dots, (x_n)$$

Definition 7.2.4. Frechet Derivative:

Let X, Y be a Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$.

- (1) • Then f is said to be **Frechet differentiable at** x_0 if there exists $Df(x_0) \in L(X, Y)$ such that,

$$f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

- If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 , we define the **Frechet derivative of f at x_0** to be $Df(x_0)$.
- We say that f is **Frechet differentiable** if for each $x \in A$, f is Frechet differentiable at x .
- If f is Frechet differentiable, we define the **Frechet derivative of f** , denoted $Df : A \rightarrow L(X, Y)$, by $x \mapsto D^{(1)}f(x)$.

- (2) Continuing inductively, we set $D^0f = f$ and for $n \geq 2$,

- f is said to be **n -th order Frechet differentiable at x_0** if f is $(n-1)$ -th order Frechet differentiable and $D^{n-1}f$ is Frechet differentiable at x_0 .
- If f is n -th order Frechet differentiable at x_0 , we define $D^n f(x_0) \in L^n(X, Y)$ by

$$D^n f(x_0) = D[D^{n-1}f](x_0)$$

- We say that f is **n -th order Frechet differentiable** if f is $(n-1)$ -th order Frechet differentiable and for each $x \in A$, $D^{n-1}f$ is Frechet differentiable at x .
- If f is n -th order Frechet differentiable, we define the **n -th order Frechet derivative of f** , denoted $D^n f : A \rightarrow L^n(X, Y)$ by $x \mapsto D^n f(x)$

(3) If f is n -th order differentiable, then f is said to be **continuously n -th order differentiable** if $D^n f$ is continuous. We define

$$C^n(A, Y) = \{f : A \rightarrow Y : f \text{ is continuously } n\text{-th order differentiable}\}$$

Exercise 7.2.5. Let X, Y be a banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f, g : A \rightarrow Y$, $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x_0 \in A$. If f and g are Frechet differentiable at x_0 , then $f + \lambda g$ is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and $D(f + \lambda g)(x_0) = Df(x_0) + \lambda Dg(x_0)$.

Proof. Suppose that f and g are Frechet differentiable at x_0 . Then

$$f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

and

$$g(x_0 + h) = g(x_0) + Dg(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} (f + \lambda g)(x_0 + h) &= f(x_0 + h) + \lambda g(x_0 + h) \\ &= f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|) + \lambda g(x_0) + \lambda Dg(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|) \\ &= (f + \lambda g)(x_0) + [Df(x_0) + \lambda Dg(x_0)](h) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

Since $Df(x_0) + \lambda Dg(x_0) \in L(X, Y)$, $f + \lambda g$ is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and $D(f + \lambda g)(x_0) = Df(x_0) + \lambda Dg(x_0)$. \square

Exercise 7.2.6. Let X, Y be a banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 , then f is continuous at x_0 .

Proof. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 . Then $f(x) - f(x_0) = Df(x_0)(x - x_0) + o(\|x - x_0\|)$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$. Hence $\|f(x) - f(x_0)\| \leq \|Df(x_0)\|\|x - x_0\| + o(\|x - x_0\|)$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$. This implies that $f(x) \rightarrow f(x_0)$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$ and therefore f is continuous at x_0 . \square

Exercise 7.2.7. Let X, Y be a banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 , then f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 and $df(x_0) = Df(x_0)$.

Proof. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 . Then $f(x_0 + h) = f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. Let $x \in X$. Then $f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0) = tDf(x_0)(x) + o(t)$ as $t \rightarrow 0$. This implies that f is differentiable at x_0 in the direction x and

$$\begin{aligned} df(x_0)(x) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= Df(x_0)(x) \end{aligned}$$

Since $x \in X$ is arbitrary, f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 and $df(x_0) = Df(x_0)$. \square

Exercise 7.2.8. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $x_0 \in A$. If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and f has a local extremum at x_0 , then $Df(x_0) = 0$.

Proof. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and f has a local extremum at x_0 . Two previous exercises imply that f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 and

$$\begin{aligned} Df(x_0) &= df(x_0) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 7.2.9. Let X, Y be a Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 . Define $R_f(x_0) : A - x_0 \rightarrow Y$ by

$$R_f(x_0)(h) = f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0) - Df(x_0)(h)$$

Exercise 7.2.10. Let X, Y be a Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$. If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 , then

$$f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0) = O(\|h\|) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0$$

Proof. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 . Then $R_f(h) = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. Hence there exists $\delta > 0$ such that $B(0, \delta) \subset A - x_0$ and for each $h \in B(0, \delta)$, $\|R_f(h)\| \leq \|h\|$. Hence for each $h \in B(0, \delta)$

$$\begin{aligned} \|f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)\| &= \|Df(x_0)(h) + R_f(x_0)(h)\| \\ &\leq \|Df(x_0)(h)\| + \|R_f(x_0)(h)\| \\ &\leq \|Df(x_0)\| \|h\| + \|h\| \\ &= (\|Df(x_0)\| + 1) \|h\| \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.2.11. Chain Rule:

Let X, Y, Z be a Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $B \subset Y$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$, $g : B \rightarrow Z$ and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that $f(x_0) \in B$. If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and g is Frechet differentiable at $f(x_0)$, then $g \circ f$ is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and

$$D(g \circ f)(x_0) = Dg(f(x_0)) \circ Df(x_0)$$

Proof. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and g is Frechet differentiable at $f(x_0)$.

- The previous exercise implies that there exists $\delta^* > 0$ and $K > 0$ such that for each $h \in B(0, \delta^*)$, $\|f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)\| \leq K\|h\|$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since $R_g(f(x_0))(h') = o(\|h'\|)$ as $h' \rightarrow 0$, there exists $\delta' > 0$ such that for each $h' \in B(0, \delta')$, $\|R_g(f(x_0))(h')\| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{K} \|h'\|$.

Choose $\delta = \min(\delta'/K, \delta^*)$. Let $h \in B(0, \delta)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)\| &\leq K\|h\| \\ &< \delta' \end{aligned}$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned}\|R_g(f(x_0))(f(x_0+h) - f(x_0))\| &\leq \frac{\epsilon}{K} \|f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)\| \\ &\leq \frac{\epsilon}{K} K \|h\| \\ &\leq \epsilon \|h\|\end{aligned}$$

So $R_g(f(x_0))(f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)) = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.

- Since $\|Dg(f(x_0))(R_f(x_0)(h))\| \leq \|Dg(f(x_0))\| \|R_f(x_0)(h)\|$ and $R_f(x_0)(h) = o(h)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$, we have that $Dg(f(x_0))(R_f(x_0)(h)) = o(h)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.
- Combining the previous two observations, we have that $Dg(f(x_0))(R_f(x_0)(h)) + R_g(f(x_0))(f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)) = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.
- All together, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}g \circ f(x_0+h) &= g(f(x_0)) + f(x_0+h) - f(x_0) \\ &= g(f(x_0)) + Dg(f(x_0))(f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)) + R_g(f(x_0))(f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)) \\ &= g(f(x_0)) + Dg(f(x_0))(Df(x_0)(h) + R_f(x_0)(h)) \\ &\quad + R_g(f(x_0))(f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)) \\ &= g(f(x_0)) + Dg(f(x_0))(Df(x_0)(h)) + Dg(f(x_0))(R_f(x_0)(h)) \\ &\quad + R_g(f(x_0))(f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)) \\ &= g \circ f(x_0) + Dg(f(x_0)) \circ Df(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|) \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0\end{aligned}$$

So $g \circ f$ is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and $D(g \circ f)(x_0) = Dg(f(x_0)) \circ Df(x_0)$. □

Exercise 7.2.12. Let Y be a Banach space, $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ open and $f : A \rightarrow Y$. Then f is Gateaux differentiable iff f is Frechet differentiable.

Proof. Suppose that f is Gateaux differentiable. Let $x_0 \in A$. A previous exercise implies that $df(x_0) \in L(\mathbb{R}, Y)$. By definition,

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left\| \frac{f(x_0+h) - f(x_0)}{h} - df(x_0)(1) \right\| = 0$$

This is equivalent to saying that

$$f(x_0+h) = f(x_0) + df(x_0)(h) + o(|h|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

So f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and $Df(x_0) = df(x_0)$. □

7.3. The Calc I Derivative.

Definition 7.3.1. Calc I Derivative:

Let Y be a Banach space, $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ open, $f : A \rightarrow Y$ and $x_0 \in A$.

- (1) • If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 , we define the **calc I derivative of f at x_0** , denoted

$$f'(x_0) \text{ or } \frac{df}{dt}(x_0)$$

by

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x_0) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + t) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= df(x_0)(1) \\ &= Df(x_0)(1) \end{aligned}$$

- If f is Frechet differentiable, we define $f' : A \rightarrow Y$ by $x \mapsto f'(x)$.
- (2) Continuing inductively, we set $f^{(0)} = f$ and for $n \geq 1$,
- if $f^{(n-1)}$ is Frechet differentiable at x_0 , we define the **(n)-th order calc I derivative of f at x_0** , denoted $f^{(n)}(x_0)$, by

$$f^{(n)}(x_0) = [f^{(n-1)}]'(x_0)$$

- if $f^{(n-1)}$ is Frechet differentiable, we define $f^{(n)} : A \rightarrow Y$ by

$$f^{(n)} = [f^{(n-1)}]'$$

Exercise 7.3.2. Let Y be a Banach space, $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ open and $f : A \rightarrow Y$. If f is n -th order Frechet differentiable, then for each $x_0 \in A$ and $k \in \{1, \dots, n\}$,

$$f^{(k)}(x_0) = D^k f(x_0)(1^{\oplus k})$$

Proof. Let $x_0 \in A$. We proceed by induction. The base case is true by definition. Let $k \in \{1, \dots, n\}$. Suppose the claim is true for $k-1$. Then

$$f^{(k-1)}(x_0) = D^{k-1} f(x_0)(1^{\oplus(k-1)})$$

Since f is n -th order Frechet differentiable,

$$D^{k-1} f(x_0 + h) = D^{k-1} f(x_0) + D^k f(x_0)(h) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(k-1)}(x_0 + h) &= D^{k-1} f(x_0 + h)(1^{\oplus(k-1)}) \\ &= D^{k-1} f(x_0)(1^{\oplus(k-1)}) + D^k f(x_0)(h)(1^{\oplus(k-1)}) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore for each $h \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$Df^{(k-1)}(x_0)(h) = D^k f(x_0)(h)(1^{\oplus(k-1)})$$

and by definition,

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(k)}(x_0) &= [f^{(k-1)}]'(x_0) \\ &= Df^{(k-1)}(x_0)(1) \\ &= D^k f(x_0)(1^{\oplus k}) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.3.3. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open, $f \in C^n(A, Y)$, $x_0 \in A$, and $h \in X$. Suppose that $\{x_0 + th : t \in [0, 1]\} \subset A$. Define and $g : (0, 1) \rightarrow Y$ by

$$g(t) = f(x_0 + th)$$

Then for each $k \in \{1 \dots, n\}$ and $t \in (0, 1)$,

$$g^{(k)}(t) = D^k f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus k})$$

Proof. We proceed by induction. It is straightforward to show that the claim is true for $k = 1$.

Let $k \in \{1 \dots, n\}$. Suppose that $g^{(k-1)}(t) = D^{k-1} f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus(k-1)})$. Since $f \in C^k(A, Y)$,

$$D^{k-1} f(x_0 + s_0 h + th) = D^{k-1} f(x_0 + s_0 h) + D^k f(x_0 + s_0 h)(th) + o(\|t\|) \quad \text{as } t \rightarrow 0$$

The previous exercise implies that

$$\begin{aligned} g^{(k-1)}(s_0 + t) &= D^{k-1} g(s_0 + t)(1^{\oplus(k-1)}) \\ &= D^{k-1} f(x_0 + s_0 h + th)(h^{\oplus(k-1)}) \\ &= D^{k-1} f(x_0 + s_0 h)(h^{\oplus(k-1)}) + D^k f(x_0 + s_0 h)(th)(h^{\oplus(k-1)}) + o(\|t\|) \quad \text{as } t \rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$Dg^{(k-1)}(s_0)(t) = D^k f(x_0 + s_0 h)(th)(h^{\oplus(k-1)})$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} g^{(k)}(t) &= Dg^{(k-1)}(t)(1) \\ &= D^k f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus k}) \end{aligned}$$

□

7.4. Mean Value Theorem.

Exercise 7.4.1. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. If f is continuous and Gateaux differentiable, then for each $x, y \in A$, there exists $t^* \in (0, 1)$ such that $f(x) - f(y) = df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)(x - y)$.

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous and Gateaux differentiable. Let $x, y \in A$. The claim is clearly true when $f(x) = f(y)$. Suppose that $f(x) \neq f(y)$. Define $h : [0, 1] \rightarrow X$ by $h(t) = tx + (1 - t)y$. Set $g = f \circ h : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then g is continuous on $[0, 1]$ and Exercise 7.1.14 implies that g is Gateaux differentiable on $(0, 1)$. Then Exercise 7.2.12 Exercise 7.1.14 and the mean value theorem implies that there exists $t^* \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) - f(y) &= g(1) - g(0) \\ &= g'(t^*) \\ &= dg(t^*)(1) \\ &= df(h(t^*))(dh(t^*)(1)) \\ &= df(h(t^*))(h'(t^*)) \\ &= df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)(x - y) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.4.2. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. If f is Frechet differentiable, then for each $x, y \in A$, there exists $t^* \in (0, 1)$ such that $f(x) - f(y) = Df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)(x - y)$.

Proof. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable. Then f is continuous and Gateaux differentiable. Now apply the previous exercise. □

Exercise 7.4.3. Mean Value Theorem:

Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open and convex and $f : A \rightarrow Y$. If f is Frechet differentiable, then for each $x, y \in A$, there exists $t^* \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$\|f(x) - f(y)\| \leq \|Df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)\| \|x - y\|$$

Hint: For $x, y \in A$ with $f(x) \neq f(y)$, using a Hahn-Banach argument, find $\lambda \in Y^*$ such that $\|\lambda\| = 1$ and $\lambda(f(x) - f(y)) = \|f(x) - f(y)\|$.

Proof. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable. Let $x, y \in A$. The claim is clearly true when $f(x) = f(y)$. Suppose that $f(x) \neq f(y)$. An exercise in the section on linear functionals implies that there exists $\lambda \in Y^*$ such that $\lambda(f(x) - f(y)) = \|f(x) - f(y)\|$ and $\|\lambda\| = 1$. Define $g : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$g(t) = \lambda(f(tx + (1 - t)y))$$

Then g is continuous and (Frechet) differentiable on $(0, 1)$ with

$$Dg(t)(h) = \lambda \circ Df(tx + (1 - t)y)((x - y)h)$$

which implies that

$$\begin{aligned} g'(t) &= Dg(t)(1) \\ &= \lambda \circ Df(tx + (1 - t)y)((x - y)) \end{aligned}$$

The mean value theorem implies that there exists $t^* \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}\|f(x) - f(y)\| &= \lambda(f(x) - f(y)) \\ &= g(1) - g(0) \\ &= g'(t^*) \\ &= \lambda \circ Df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)((x - y))\end{aligned}$$

Taking absolute values, we see that

$$\begin{aligned}\|f(x) - f(y)\| &= |\lambda \circ Df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)((x - y))| \\ &\leq \|\lambda\| \|Df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)\| \|x - y\| \\ &\leq \|Df(t^*x + (1 - t^*)y)\| \|x - y\|\end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.4.4. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open and convex and $f : A \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable. If for each $x \in A$, $Df(x) = 0$, then f is constant.

Proof. Suppose that for each $x \in A$, $Df(x) = 0$. Let $x, y \in A$. Then the mean value theorem implies that there exists $t \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}\|f(x) - f(y)\| &\leq \|Df(tx + (1 - t)y)\| \|x - y\| \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

So $f(x) = f(y)$.

□

Exercise 7.4.5. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset X$ open and convex and $f, g : A \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f and g are Frechet differentiable. If $Df = Dg$, then there exists $c \in Y$ such that $f = g + c$.

Proof. Suppose that $Df = Dg$. Then $D(f - g) = 0$ and the previous exercise implies that $f - g$ is constant. □

Exercise 7.4.6. Let X, Y be Banach spaces, $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ open and $f : A \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable. Then $f' \in C(A, Y)$ iff $f \in C^1(A, Y)$.

Proof. Suppose that $f' \in C(A, Y)$. Let $x, y \in A$ and $h \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|(Df(x) - Df(y))(h)\| &= \|Df(x)(h) - Df(y)(h)\| \\ &= \|hf'(x) - hf'(y)\| \\ &= \|h(f'(x) - f'(y))\| \\ &= \|f'(x) - f'(y)\| |h|\end{aligned}$$

So $\|Df(x) - Df(y)\| \leq \|f'(x) - f'(y)\|$. Hence continuity of f' implies continuity of Df and $f \in C^1(A, Y)$. Conversely, suppose that $f \in C^1(A, Y)$. Let $x, y \in A$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|f'(x) - f'(y)\| &= \|Df(x)(1) - Df(y)(1)\| \\ &= \|(Df(x) - Df(y))(1)\| \\ &\leq \|Df(x) - Df(y)\|\end{aligned}$$

Hence continuity of Df implies continuity of f' and $f' \in C(A, Y)$.

□

7.5. Taylor's Theorem.

Note 7.5.1. This section makes use of the Bochner integral. For reference, see .

Exercise 7.5.2. Let Y be a separable Banach space, $f : [a, b] \rightarrow Y$ continuous so that f is Bochner-integrable. Define $F : (a, b) \rightarrow Y$ by

$$F(x) = \int_{(a, x]} f dm$$

Then $F \in C^1((a, b), Y)$ and for each $x_0 \in (a, b)$ and $F'(x_0) = f(x_0)$.

Proof. Let $x_0 \in (a, b)$ and $h \in (0, b - x_0)$. Then continuity implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\|h\|} \left\| \int_{(x_0, x_0+h]} f - f(x_0) dm \right\| &\leq \frac{1}{\|h\|} \max_{x \in (x_0, x_0+h]} \|f(x) - f(x_0)\| \|h\| \\ &= \max_{x \in [x_0, x_0+h]} \|f(x) - f(x_0)\| \\ &\rightarrow 0 \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\int_{(x_0, x_0+h]} f - f(x_0) dm = o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} F(x_0 + h) &= \int_{(a, x_0+h]} f dm \\ &= \int_{(a, x_0]} f dm + \int_{(x_0, x_0+h]} f dm \\ &= \int_{(a, x_0]} f dm + hf(x_0) + \int_{(x_0, x_0+h]} f - f(x_0) dm \\ &= F(x_0) + hf(x_0) + o(\|h\|) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

The case is similar for $h \in (x_0 - b, 0)$. Since the map $h \mapsto f(x_0)h$ is bounded, F is Frechet differentiable at x_0 and $DF(x_0)(h) = f(x_0)h$. This implies that $F'(x_0) = f(x_0)$ and the previous exercise implies tells us that continuity of f implies continuity of DF . So $F \in C^1(A, Y)$. \square

Exercise 7.5.3. Fundamental Theorem of Calculus: Let Y be a separable Banach space and $f \in C^1((a, b), Y)$. Then for each $x, x_0 \in (a, b)$, $x_0 < x$ implies that

- (1) f' is Bochner integrable on $(x_0, x]$
- (2)

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \int_{(x_0, x]} f' dm$$

Proof. (1) Since $f \in C^1((a, b), Y)$, a previous exercise tells us that $f' \in C_Y(a, b)$. Let $x, x_0 \in (a, b)$. Suppose that $x_0 < x$. Choose $c, d \in (a, b)$ such that $a < c < x_0 < x < d < b$. Then f' is continuous on $[c, d]$ and hence Bochner-integrable on $(c, d]$ and $(x_0, x]$.

(2) Define $g : (c, d) \rightarrow Y$ by

$$g(\xi) = \int_{(c, \xi]} f' dm$$

Then the previous exercise implies that $g \in C_Y^1(c, d)$ and for each $t \in (c, d)$, $g'(t) = f'(t)$. Let $t \in (c, d)$ and $h \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} Dg(t)(h) &= hg'(t) \\ &= hf'(t) \\ &= Df(t)(h) \end{aligned}$$

So $Dg = Df$ on (c, d) . A previous exercise implies that there exists $c \in Y$ such that $f = g + c$ on (c, d) . Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) - f(x_0) &= g(x) + c - (g(x_0) + c) \\ &= g(x) - g(x_0) \\ &= \int_{(c, x]} f' dm - \int_{(c, x_0]} f' dm \\ &= \int_{(x_0, x]} f' dm \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.5.4. Let Y be a Banach space, $A \subset \mathbb{R}$ open and $g : A \rightarrow Y$. If g is n -th order Frechet differentiable, then

$$\frac{d}{dt} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{(1-t)^k}{k!} g^{(k)}(t) = \frac{(1-t)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} g^{(n)}(t)$$

Proof. Taking the derivative yields a telescoping series. □

Exercise 7.5.5. Taylor's Theorem I:

Let X be a Banach space, Y a separable Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f \in C^{n+1}(A, Y)$, $x_0 \in A$, and $h \in A - x_0$. Then

$$f(x_0 + h) = \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) + R(x_0)(h)$$

where $R(x_0) : A - x_0 \rightarrow Y$ is defined by

$$R(x_0)(h) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^n D^{n+1} f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus(n+1)}) dm(t)$$

and $R(x_0)(h) = o(\|h\|^n)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.

Hint: Define $g : (0, 1) \rightarrow Y$ by

$$g(t) = f(x_0 + th)$$

Then use the previous exercise and the fundamental theorem of calculus.

Proof. Let $h \in X$. Suppose that $x_0 + h \in A$. Define $g : (0, 1) \rightarrow Y$ by

$$g(t) = f(x_0 + th)$$

For each $k \in \{1, \dots, n+1\}$, a previous exercise implies that $g^{(k)}(t) = D^k f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus k})$, so $g^{(k)}(0) = D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k})$. The previous exercise and the fundamental theorem of calculus tell us that

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x_0 + h) - \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) &= g(1) - \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{k!} g^{(k)}(0) \\
 &= \int_{(0,1)} \left[\frac{d}{dt} \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{(1-t)^k}{k!} g^{(k)}(t) \right] dm(t) \\
 &= \int_{(0,1)} \frac{(1-t)^n}{n!} g^{(n+1)}(t) dm(t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{n!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^n D^{n+1} f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus(n+1)}) dm(t) \\
 &= R(x_0)(h)
 \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\frac{1}{n+1} = \frac{1}{n!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^n dm(t)$$

Since $D^{n+1}f$ is continuous at x_0 , there exists $\delta_1 > 0$ such that for each $h \in B(0, \delta_1)$, $x_0 + h \in A$ and

$$\|D^{n+1}f(x_0 + h) - D^{n+1}f(x_0)\| < 1$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta_2 > 0$ such that

$$\frac{1}{n+1} \left(\|D^{n+1}f(x_0)\| + 1 \right) \delta_2 < \epsilon$$

Set $\delta = \min(\delta_1, \delta_2)$. Let $h \in B(0, \delta)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|R(x_0)(h)\| &= \left\| \int_{(0,1)} \frac{1}{n!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^n D^{n+1}f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus(n+1)}) dm(t) \right\| \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{n!} \int_{(0,1)} \|(1-t)^n D^{n+1}f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus(n+1)})\| dm(t) \\
 &\leq \max_{t \in [0,1]} \|D^{n+1}f(x_0 + th)\| \|h\|^{n+1} \frac{1}{n!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^n dm(t) \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{n+1} \left(\|D^{n+1}f(x_0)\| + \max_{t \in [0,1]} \|D^{n+1}f(x_0 + th) - D^{n+1}f(x_0)\| \right) \|h\|^{n+1} \\
 &< \frac{1}{n+1} \left(\|D^{n+1}f(x_0)\| + 1 \right) \|h\|^{n+1} \\
 &< \epsilon \|h\|^n
 \end{aligned}$$

So $R(x_0)(h) = o(\|h\|^n)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. □

Exercise 7.5.6. Taylor's Theorem II:

Let X be a Banach space, Y a separable Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f \in$

$C^n(A, Y)$, $x_0 \in A$, and $h \in A - x_0$. Then there exists $R(x_0) : A - x_0 \rightarrow Y$ such that

$$f(x_0 + h) = \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) + R(x_0)(h)$$

and $R(x_0)(h) = o(\|h\|^n)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.

Hint: use Taylor's theorem and expand the derivative inside the integral.

Proof. This is clear by definition for $n = 1$. Suppose that $n \geq 2$. Taylor's theorem implies that

$$f(x_0 + h) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) + S(x_0)(h)$$

where $S(x_0) : A - x_0 \rightarrow Y$ is defined by

$$S(x_0)(h) = \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} D^{n-1} f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) dm(t)$$

and $S(x_0; h) = o(\|h\|^n)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. Define $T^{n-1}(x_0) : A - x_0 \rightarrow L^{n-1}(X; Y)$ by

$$T^{n-1}(x_0)(h) = D^{n-1} f(x_0 + h) - D^{n-1} f(x_0) - D^n f(x_0)(h)$$

so that

$$D^{n-1} f(x_0 + h) = D^{n-1} f(x_0) + D^n f(x_0)(h) + T^{n-1}(x_0)(h)$$

and $T^{n-1}(x_0)(h) = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.

Define $R(x_0) : A - x_0 \rightarrow Y$ by

$$R(x_0)(h) = \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} T^{n-1}(x_0)(th)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) dm(t)$$

Note that

•

$$\int_0^1 (1-t)^{n-2} dt = \frac{1}{n-1}$$

•

$$\int_0^1 (1-t)^{n-2} t dt = \frac{1}{n(n-1)}$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta > 0$ such that for each $h \in B(0, \delta)$, $h \in A - x_0$ and

$$\|T^{n-1}(x_0)(h)\| \leq \epsilon n! \|h\|$$

Let $h \in B(0, \delta)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|R(x_0)(h)\| &= \left\| \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} T^{n-1}(x_0)(th)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) dm(t) \right\| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} \|T^{n-1}(x_0)(th)(h^{\oplus(n-1)})\| dm(t) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} \|T^{n-1}(x_0)(th)\| \|h\|^{n-1} dm(t) \\ &\leq \frac{\epsilon}{(n-2)!} n! \|h\|^n \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} t dm(t) \\ &= \epsilon \|h\|^n \end{aligned}$$

So that $R(x_0)(h) = o(\|h\|^n)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$.

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 S(x_0)(h) &= \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} D^{n-1} f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) dm(t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} D^{n-1} f(x_0)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) dm(t) \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} t D^n f(x_0)(h)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) dm(t) \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-2} T^{n-1}(x_0)(th)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) dm(t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{(n-1)!} D^{n-1} f(x_0)(h^{\oplus(n-1)}) + \frac{1}{n!} D^n f(x_0)(h^{\oplus n}) + R_f(x_0)(h)
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x_0 + h) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) + S(x_0)(h) \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) + R(x_0)(h)
 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.5.7. Taylor's Theorem III:

Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f \in C^n(A)$, $x_0 \in A$, and $h \in A - x_0$. Then there exists $t^* \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$f(x_0 + h) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) + \frac{1}{(n-1)!} (1-t^*)^{n-1} D^n f(x_0 + t^*h)(h^{\oplus n})$$

Hint: use Taylor's theorem and the mean value theorem.

Proof. Taylors Theorem implies that

$$f(x_0 + h) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{k!} D^k f(x_0)(h^{\oplus k}) + R(x_0)(h)$$

where

$$R(x_0)(h) = \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \int_{(0,1)} (1-t)^{n-1} D^n f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus n}) dm(t)$$

Define $F \in C^1([0, 1])$ by

$$F(t) = \int_{(0,t]} \frac{1}{(n-1)!} (1-s)^{n-1} D^n f(x_0 + sh)(h^{\oplus n}) dm(s)$$

Then the fundamental theorem of calculus implies that

$$F'(t) = \frac{1}{(n-1)!} (1-t)^{n-1} D^n f(x_0 + th)(h^{\oplus n})$$

The mean value theorem implies that there exists $t^* \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} R(x_0)(h) &= F(1) - F(0) \\ &= F'(t^*) \\ &= \frac{1}{(n-1)!} (1-t^*)^{n-1} D^n f(x_0 + t^*h)(h^{\oplus n}) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 7.5.8. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex and $f \in C^2(A)$, $x_0 \in A$. If f has a local minimum at x_0 , then $D^2f(x_0)$ is positive semidefinite.

Proof. Suppose that f has a local minimum at x_0 , then $Df(x_0) = 0$. Let $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq f(x+h) - f(x_0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} D^2f(x_0)(h, h) + o(\|h\|^2) \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0 \end{aligned}$$

Let $h \in X$. Then

$$0 \leq \frac{1}{2} t^2 D^2f(x_0)(h, h) + o(t^2) \quad \text{as } t \rightarrow 0$$

This implies that $D^2f(x_0)(h, h) \geq 0$. So $D^2f(x_0)$ is positive semidefinite. □

7.6. The Gradient.

Definition 7.6.1. Let H be a Hilbert space, $f : H \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $x_0 \in H$. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 . Then $Df(x_0) \in H^*$. We define the **gradient of f at x_0** , denoted $\nabla f(x_0) \in H$, via the Riesz representation theorem to be the unique element of H satisfying

$$\langle \nabla f(x_0), y \rangle = Df(x_0)(y) \quad \text{for each } y \in H$$

8. CONVEXITY

8.1. Introduction.

Note 8.1.1. In this section, we assume all vector spaces are real.

Definition 8.1.2. Let X be a vector space and $A \subset X$. Then A is said to be **convex** if for each $x, y \in A$, and $t \in [0, 1]$, $tx + (1 - t)y \in A$.

Definition 8.1.3. Let X be a vector space and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then f is said to be **convex** if for each $x, y \in A$, $t \in [0, 1]$,

$$f(tx + (1 - t)y) \leq tf(x) + (1 - t)f(y)$$

Definition 8.1.4. Let X be a vector space and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then f is said to be **strictly convex** if for each $x, y \in A$, $t \in (0, 1)$, $x \neq y$ implies that

$$f(tx + (1 - t)y) < tf(x) + (1 - t)f(y)$$

Exercise 8.1.5. Let X be a vector space, $f \in X^*$ and $g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ constant. Then f and g are convex.

Proof. Let $x, y \in X$ and $t \in [0, 1]$. Put $c = g(0)$. Then

$$f(tx + (1 - t)y) = tf(x) + (1 - t)f(y)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} g(tx + (1 - t)y) &= c \\ &= tc + (1 - t)c \\ &= tg(x) + (1 - t)g(y) \end{aligned}$$

So f and g are convex. □

Exercise 8.1.6. Let X be a vector space, $A \subset X$ convex, $f, g : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $\lambda \geq 0$. If f, g are convex, then

- (1) $f + g$ is convex
- (2) λf is convex

Proof. Suppose that f and g are convex. Let $x, y \in A$ and $t \in [0, 1]$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (f + \lambda g)(tx + (1 - t)y) &= f(tx + (1 - t)y) + \lambda g(tx + (1 - t)y) \\ &\leq tf(x) + (1 - t)f(y) + t\lambda g(x) + (1 - t)\lambda g(y) \\ &= t(f(x) + \lambda g(x)) + (1 - t)(f(y) + \lambda g(y)) \\ &= t(f + \lambda g)(x) + (1 - t)(f + \lambda g)(y) \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 8.1.7. Let X be a vector space and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then f is said to be **affine** if there exists $\phi \in X^*$, $a \in \mathbb{R}$ constant such that $f = \phi + a$.

Exercise 8.1.8. Let X be a vector space and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. If f is affine, then f is convex.

Proof. Suppose that f is affine. Then there exists $\phi \in X^*$, $a \in \mathbb{R}$ constant such that $f = \phi + a$. Then ϕ is convex and $g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $g(x) = a$ is convex. So $f = \phi + g$ is convex. □

Exercise 8.1.9. Let X be a vector space, $A \subset X$ convex, $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $g : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. If f is convex and increasing and g is convex, then $f \circ g$ is convex.

Proof. Let $t \in [0, 1]$ and $x, y \in A$. Then convexity of g implies that

$$g(tx + (1 - t)y) \leq tg(x) + (1 - t)g(y)$$

and we have

$$\begin{aligned} f \circ g(tx + (1 - t)y) &= f(g(tx + (1 - t)y)) \\ &\leq f(tg(x) + (1 - t)g(y)) && (f \text{ increasing}) \\ &\leq tf(g(x)) + (1 - t)f(g(y)) && (f \text{ convex}) \\ &= tf \circ g(x) + (1 - t)f \circ g(y) \end{aligned}$$

So $f \circ g$ is convex. \square

Exercise 8.1.10. Let X be a vector space, $A \subset X$ convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. Then f has a local minimum point at x_0 iff f has a global minimum point at x_0 .

Proof. If f has a global minimum point at x_0 , then f has a local minimum point at x_0 . Conversely, suppose that f has a local minimum point at x_0 . Then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for each $x \in B(x_0, \delta) \cap A$, $f(x_0) \leq f(x)$. For the sake of contradiction, suppose that f does not have a global minimum point at x_0 . Then there exists $x' \in A$ such that $f(x') < f(x_0)$. Put $t_0 = \min(\frac{\delta}{\|x' - x_0\| + 1}, 1) > 0$. Let $t \in (0, t_0)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \|(tx' + (1 - t)x_0) - x_0\| &= t\|x' - x_0\| \\ &< \frac{\|x' - x_0\|\delta}{\|x' - x_0\| + 1} \\ &< \delta \end{aligned}$$

so that $tx' + (1 - t)x_0 \in B(x_0, \delta) \cap A$ and hence $f(x_0) \leq f(tx' + (1 - t)x_0)$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_0) &\leq f(tx' + (1 - t)x_0) \\ &\leq tf(x') + (1 - t)f(x_0) \quad (\text{convexity of } f) \\ &< tf(x_0) + (1 - t)f(x_0) \\ &= f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction. Hence f has a global minimum point at x_0 . \square

Exercise 8.1.11. Let X be a vector space, $A \subset X$ convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ strictly convex and $x_0 \in X$. If f has a local minimum point at x_0 , then f has a unique global minimum point at x_0 .

Proof. Suppose that f has a local minimum point at x_0 . The previous exercise implies that f has a global minimum point at x_0 . For the sake of contradiction suppose that there exists $x_1 \in X$ such that f has a global minimum point at x_1 and $x_0 \neq x_1$. This implies $f(x_0) = f(x_1)$. Set $t = 1/2$. Strict convexity implies that

$$\begin{aligned} f(tx_0 + (1 - t)x_1) &< tf(x_0) + (1 - t)f(x_1) \\ &= f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction since f has a global minimum point at x_0 . \square

Definition 8.1.12. Let X, Y be vector spaces, $A \subset X \oplus Y$. For $y \in Y$, define

$$A^y = \{x \in X : (x, y) \in A\}$$

and $f^y : A^y \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$f^y(x) = f(x, y)$$

Exercise 8.1.13. Let X, Y be vector spaces, $A \subset X \oplus Y$ convex and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex. Then for each $y \in \pi_2(A)$,

- (1) A^y is convex
- (2) f^y is convex

where $\pi_2 : X \times Y \rightarrow Y$, the canonical projection of $X \times Y$ onto Y given by $\pi_2(x, y) = y$.

Proof. Let $y \in \pi_2(A)$, $x_1, x_2 \in A^y$ and $t \in [0, 1]$. Then by definition, $(x_1, y), (x_2, y) \in A$.

- (1) Convexity of A implies that $(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2, y) \in A$. Hence $tx_1 + (1-t)x_2 \in A^y$ and A^y is convex.
- (2) Convexity of f implies that

$$\begin{aligned} f^y(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2) &= f(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2, y) \\ &= f(t(x_1, y) + (1-t)(x_2, y)) \\ &\leq tf(x_1, y) + (1-t)f(x_2, y) \\ &= tf^y(x_1) + (1-t)f^y(x_2) \end{aligned}$$

and so f^y is convex. □

Exercise 8.1.14. Let X, Y be vector spaces and $A \subset X, B \subset Y$. If A and B are convex, then $A \times B \subset X \oplus Y$ is convex.

Proof. Suppose that A and B are convex. Let $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \in A \times B$ and $t \in [0, 1]$. Convexity of A and B implies that $tx_1 + (1-t)x_2 \in A$ and $ty_1 + (1-t)y_2 \in B$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} t(x_1, y_1) + (1-t)(x_2, y_2) &= (tx_1 + (1-t)x_2, ty_1 + (1-t)y_2) \\ &\in A \times B \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 8.1.15. Let X, Y be vector spaces and $A \subset X, B \subset Y$ convex (implying that $A \times B$ is convex) and $f : A \times B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex. Suppose that for each $y \in B$, $\{f(x, y) : x \in A\}$ is bounded below. Then $\inf_{y \in B} f^y$ is convex

Proof. Put $g = \inf_{y \in B} f^y$. Let $x_1, x_2 \in A$, $y_1, y_2 \in B$ and $t \in [0, 1]$. Put $y' = ty_1 + (1-t)y_2$.

Then convexity of f implies that

$$\begin{aligned} g(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2) &\leq f^{y'}(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2) \\ &= f(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2, ty_1 + (1-t)y_2) \\ &= f(t(x_1, y_1) + (1-t)(x_2, y_2)) \\ &\leq tf(x_1, y_1) + (1-t)f(x_2, y_2) \\ &= tf^{y_1}(x_1) + (1-t)f^{y_2}(x_2) \end{aligned}$$

Since $y_1 \in B$ is arbitrary, we have that

$$g(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2) \leq tg(x_1) + (1-t)f^{y_2}(x_2)$$

Similarly, since $y_2 \in B$ is arbitrary, we have that

$$g(tx_1 + (1-t)x_2) \leq tg(x_1) + (1-t)g(x_2)$$

and f is convex. □

Exercise 8.1.16. Let X be a vector space, $A \subset X$ convex and $(f_\lambda)_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \subset \mathbb{R}^A$. Suppose that for each $\lambda \in \Lambda$, f_λ is convex. Then $\sup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} f_\lambda$ is convex.

Proof. Define $f = \sup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} f_\lambda$. Let $x, y \in A$, $t \in [0, 1]$ and $\lambda \in \Lambda$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} f_\lambda(tx + (1-t)y) &\leq tf_\lambda(x) + (1-t)f_\lambda(y) \\ &\leq tf(x) + (1-t)f(y) \end{aligned}$$

Since $\lambda \in \Lambda$ is arbitrary, $f(tx + (1-t)y) \leq tf(x) + (1-t)f(y)$. □

Exercise 8.1.17. Let X be a normed vector space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. If f is continuous at x_0 , then f is locally Lipschitz at x_0 .

Hint: Given x_1, x_2 near x_0 Choose a z near x_0 s.t. x_1 is a convex combination of x_2 and z . Then repeat but with x_2 as a convex combination of x_1 and z

Proof. By continuity, f is locally bounded at x_0 . So there exist $M, \delta > 0$ such that $B(x_0, \delta) \subset A$ and for each $x \in B(x_0, \delta)$, $|f(x)| \leq M$. Put $\delta' = \frac{\delta}{2}$ and choose $U = B(x_0, \delta')$. Then $U \subset A$ and $U \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$.

Let $x_1, x_2 \in U$. Suppose that $x_1 \neq x_2$. Define $\alpha = \|x_1 - x_2\| > 0$, $p = \frac{\alpha}{\alpha + \delta'}$, $q = 1 - p$ and $z = p^{-1}(x_1 - qx_2)$. Then $x_1 = pz + qx_2$ and

$$\begin{aligned} \|z - x_1\| &= \|(p^{-1} - 1)x_1 - p^{-1}qx_2\| \\ &= \frac{1-p}{p}\alpha \\ &= \frac{\delta'}{\alpha}\alpha \\ &= \delta' \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \|z - x_0\| &\leq \|z - x_1\| + \|x_1 - x_0\| \\ &< \delta' + \delta' \\ &= \delta \end{aligned}$$

So $z \in B(x_0, \delta)$, which implies that

$$\begin{aligned} |f(z) - f(x_2)| &\leq |f(z) - f(x_2)| \\ &\leq |f(z)| + |f(x_2)| \\ &\leq 2M \end{aligned}$$

Since $x_1 = pz + qx_2$, convexity of f implies that $f(x_1) \leq pf(z) + qf(x_2)$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_1) - f(x_2) &\leq pf(z) - pf(x_2) \\ &= p(f(z) - f(x_2)) \\ &\leq p2M \\ &= \frac{\alpha}{\alpha + \delta'} 2M \\ &\leq \alpha 2M \\ &= 2M\|x_1 - x_2\| \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, choosing $z = p^{-1}(x_2 - qx_1)$, yields $f(x_2) - f(x_1) \leq 2M\|x_1 - x_2\|$ which implies that

$$|f(x_1) - f(x_2)| \leq 2M\|x_1 - x_2\|$$

and f is Lipschitz on U . □

8.2. The Subdifferential.

Exercise 8.2.1. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex, $x_0 \in A$ and $x \in X$. Define $T = \{t \in \mathbb{R} : x_0 + tx \in A\}$. Then there exist $a, b \in (0, \infty]$ such that $T = (-a, b)$.

Proof. Continuity of scalar multiplication and addition implies that T is an open neighborhood of 0. Let $t > 0$ and $s \in [0, t]$. Then $\frac{s}{t} \in [0, 1]$ and by convexity of A , $x_0 + tx \in A$ implies that

$$\begin{aligned} x_0 + sx &= \frac{s}{t}(x_0 + tx) + \left(1 - \frac{s}{t}\right)x_0 \\ &\in A \end{aligned}$$

Thus $[0, t] \subset T$. Similarly, $x_0 - tx \in A$ implies that $[-t, 0] \subset T$.

Define $a, b \in (0, \infty]$ by $a = \sup\{t > 0 : x_0 - tx \in A\}$ and $b = \sup\{t > 0 : x_0 + tx \in A\}$. Then $(-a, b) = T$. \square

Definition 8.2.2. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex, $x_0 \in A$ and $x \in X$. Define T as in the previous exercise and choose $t_0 > 0$ such that $(-t_0, t_0) \subset T$. For $t \in (0, t_0)$, define the difference quotient $q : (-t_0, t_0) \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$q(t) = \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t}$$

Exercise 8.2.3. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex, $x_0 \in A$ and $x \in X$. Define t_0 as above. Then

- (1) $q(t)$ is increasing on $(0, t_0)$
- (2) $q(-t)$ decreasing on $(0, t_0)$

Hint: As an example, look at the graph of $f(x) = x^2$. For the algebra, start at the desired end inequality and work backwards

Proof.

- (1) Let $s, t \in (0, t_0)$ and suppose that $s \leq t$. Then $x_0 + sx, x_0 + tx \in A$. Note that since $0 < s \leq t$, $\frac{s}{t} \in (0, 1]$ and $1 - \frac{s}{t} = \frac{t-s}{t} \in (0, 1]$. Also, since A is convex, we have that

$$\left(\frac{t-s}{t}\right)x_0 + \left(\frac{s}{t}\right)(x_0 + tx) \in A$$

Convexity of f implies that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_0 + sx) &= f\left(\left(\frac{t-s}{t}\right)x_0 + \left(\frac{s}{t}\right)(x_0 + tx)\right) \\ &\leq \left(\frac{t-s}{t}\right)f(x_0) + \left(\frac{s}{t}\right)f(x_0 + tx) \end{aligned}$$

This implies that

$$tf(x_0 + sx) \leq (t-s)f(x_0) + sf(x_0 + tx)$$

and after rearranging, we get

$$tf(x_0 + sx) - tf(x_0) \leq sf(x_0 + tx) - sf(x_0)$$

and so finally, dividing both sides by st , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} q(s) &= \frac{f(x_0 + sx) - f(x_0)}{s} \\ &\leq \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= q(t) \end{aligned}$$

as desired.

(2) Similar to (1). □

Exercise 8.2.4. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex, $x_0 \in A$ and $x \in X$. Define t_0 as before. Then for each $t \in (0, t_0)$,

$$q(-t) \leq q(t)$$

Hint: for sufficiently small t , convexity of f implies that $f(x_0) \leq \frac{1}{2}f(x_0 - 2tx) + \frac{1}{2}f(x_0 + 2tx)$

Proof. Choose t_0 as in the previous exercise. Since convexity of f implies that for each $t \in (0, t_0/2)$,

$$f(x_0) \leq \frac{1}{2}f(x_0 - 2tx) + \frac{1}{2}f(x_0 + 2tx)$$

we have that for each $t \in (0, t_0/2)$,

$$\begin{aligned} q(-2t) &= \frac{f(x_0 - 2tx) - f(x_0)}{-2t} \\ &\leq \frac{f(x_0 + 2tx) - f(x_0)}{2t} \\ &= q(2t) \end{aligned}$$

So for each $t \in (0, t_0)$, $q(-t) \leq q(t)$. □

Exercise 8.2.5. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. Then

- (1) f is left-hand and right-hand Gateaux differentiable at x_0 with $d^-f(x_0) \leq d^+f(x_0)$
- (2) for each $x \in X$, $d^-f(x_0)(x) = -d^+f(x_0)(-x)$

Proof.

- (1) Let $x \in X$. Choose $t_0 > 0$ as in the previous two exercises. Let $t, u \in (0, t_0)$. Choose $s \in (0, \min(u, t))$. The previous two exercises imply that

$$\begin{aligned} q(-u) &\leq q(-s) \\ &\leq q(s) \\ &\leq q(t) \end{aligned}$$

and therefore $q(t)$ is an upper bound for $\{q(-u) : u \in (0, t_0)\}$ and $d^-f(x_0)(x) = \sup_{u \in (0, t_0)} q(-u)$ exists with $d^-f(x_0)(x) \leq q(t)$.

Since $t \in (0, t_0)$ is arbitrary, $d^-f(x_0)(x)$ is a lower bound for $\{q(t) : t \in (0, t_0)\}$. Therefore

$$d^+f(x_0)(x) = \inf_{t \in (0, t_0)} q(t)$$

exists with $d^+f(x_0)(x) \geq d^-f(x_0)(x)$.

(2) By definition, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d^-f(x_0)(x) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 - tx) - f(x_0)}{-t} \\ &= - \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 - tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= -d^+f(x_0)(-x) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 8.2.6. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. Then $d^+f(x_0) : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a sublinear functional.

Proof. Let $x, y \in X$ and $k \geq 0$. If $k = 0$, then clearly

$$d^+f(x_0)(kx) = kd^+(x_0)(x)$$

If $k > 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d^+f(x_0)(kx) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + tkx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &= k \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + tkx) - f(x_0)}{tk} \\ &= kd^+f(x_0)(x) \end{aligned}$$

Define $t_0 > 0$ as before and let $t \in (0, \frac{t_0}{2})$. Note that

$$x_0 + tx + ty = \frac{1}{2}(x_0 + 2tx) + \frac{1}{2}(x_0 + 2ty)$$

Convexity of f implies that

$$f(x_0 + tx + ty) \leq \frac{1}{2}f(x_0 + 2tx) + \frac{1}{2}f(x_0 + 2ty)$$

which implies that

$$\frac{f(x_0 + tx + ty) - f(x_0)}{t} \leq \frac{f(x_0 + 2tx) - f(x_0)}{2t} + \frac{f(x_0 + 2ty) - f(x_0)}{2t}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
 d^+f(x_0)(x+y) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + t(x+y)) - f(x_0)}{t} \\
 &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + tx + ty) - f(x_0)}{t} \\
 &\leq \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \left[\frac{f(x_0 + 2tx) - f(x_0)}{2t} + \frac{f(x_0 + 2ty) - f(x_0)}{2t} \right] \\
 &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + 2tx) - f(x_0)}{2t} + \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + 2ty) - f(x_0)}{2t} \\
 &= d^+f(x_0)(x) + d^+f(x_0)(y)
 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 8.2.7. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. Then for each $x \in A$,

$$d^+f(x_0)(x - x_0) \leq f(x) - f(x_0)$$

Proof. Let $x \in A$. Define $T = \{t \in \mathbb{R} : x_0 + t(x - x_0) \in A\}$ similarly to earlier. Clearly $1 \in T$ and

$$\begin{aligned}
 d^+f(x_0)(x - x_0) &= \inf_{t \in (0,1]} \frac{f(x_0 + t(x - x_0)) - f(x_0)}{t} \\
 &\leq f(x) - f(x_0)
 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 8.2.8. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. If f is continuous at x_0 , then $d^+f(x_0)$ is Lipschitz (equivalently bounded).

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous at x_0 . A previous exercise about convex functions tells us that f is locally Lipschitz at x_0 , so there exists $\delta, M > 0$ such that for each $x_1, x_2 \in B(x_0, \delta)$, $|f(x_1) - f(x_2)| \leq M\|x_1 - x_2\|$. Let $x \in X$ and define $t_0 = \frac{\delta}{\|x\|+1}$ so that for each $t \in (0, t_0)$,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|(x_0 + tx) - x_0\| &= t\|x\| \\
 &\leq t_0\|x\| \\
 &= \frac{\delta\|x\|}{\|x\| + 1} \\
 &< \delta
 \end{aligned}$$

and $x_0 + tx \in B(x_0, \delta)$. Then for each $t \in (0, t_0)$,

$$\begin{aligned}
 d^+f(x_0)(x) &\leq \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\
 &\leq \frac{|f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)|}{t} \\
 &\leq t^{-1}M\|(x_0 + tx) - x_0\| \\
 &= M\|x\|
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $d^+f(x_0)$ is a bounded sublinear functional and a previous exercise in the section on sublinear functionals implies this is equivalent to $d^+f(x_0)$ being Lipschitz. □

Exercise 8.2.9. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. If f is continuous at x_0 , then there exists $\phi \in X^*$ such that $\phi \leq d^+f(x_0)$.

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous at x_0 . The previous exercise implies that $d^+f(x_0)$ is Lipschitz (equivalently bounded). A previous exercise in the section discussing sublinear functionals tells us that boundedness of $d^+f(x_0)$ implies that there exists $\phi \in X^*$ such that $\phi \leq d^+f(x_0)$. \square

Definition 8.2.10. Subdifferential:

Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. We define the **subdifferential of f at x_0** , denoted $\partial f(x_0)$, to be

$$\partial f(x_0) = \{\phi \in X^* : \text{for each } x \in A, f(x_0) + \phi(x - x_0) \leq f(x)\}$$

Exercise 8.2.11. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. If f is continuous at x_0 , then $\partial f(x_0) \neq \emptyset$.

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous at x_0 . The previous exercise tells us that there exists $\phi \in X^*$ such that $\phi \leq d^+f(x_0)$. Let $x \in A$. A previous exercise implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x - x_0) &\leq d^+f(x_0)(x - x_0) \\ &\leq f(x) - f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

Then $f(x_0) + \phi(x - x_0) \leq f(x)$. \square

Exercise 8.2.12. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex, $\phi \in X^*$ and $x_0 \in A$. Then

(1) for each $x \in A$,

$$\phi(x - x_0) \leq f(x) - f(x_0)$$

iff

$$\phi \leq d^+f(x_0)$$

(2) $\partial f(x_0) = \{\phi \in X^* : \phi \leq d^+f(x_0)\}$

Proof.

(1) Suppose that for each $x \in A$, $\phi(x - x_0) \leq f(x) - f(x_0)$. Let $x \in X$. Define t_0 as before. Then for each $t \in (0, t_0)$,

$$\begin{aligned} t\phi(x) &= \phi((x_0 + tx) - x_0) \\ &\leq f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

This implies that $\phi(x) \leq d^+f(x_0)(x)$.

Conversely, suppose that $\phi \leq d^+f(x_0)$. Let $x \in A$. A previous exercise implies that,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x - x_0) &\leq d^+f(x_0)(x - x_0) \\ &\leq f(x) - f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

(2) Clear. \square

Exercise 8.2.13. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. If f is continuous at x_0 , then the following are equivalent:

(1) f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0

- (2) $d^+f(x_0)$ is linear
- (3) $\#\partial f(x_0) = 1$

Proof. Suppose that f is continuous at x_0 . Then $d^+f(x_0)$ is Lipschitz and bounded.

- (1) \implies (2):

Suppose that f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 . Let $x \in X$. Then a previous exercise implies that

$$\begin{aligned} -df^+(x_0)(-x) &= df^-f(x_0)(x) \\ &= df^+f(x_0)(x) \end{aligned}$$

An exercise in the section on sublinear functionals implies that $df^+f(x_0)$ is linear.

- (2) \implies (3):

Suppose that $df^+f(x_0)$ is linear. Let $\phi \in \partial f(x_0)$. The previous exercise implies that $\phi \leq df^+f(x_0)$. Equivalence of linearity in the section on sublinear functionals implies that $d^+f(x_0) = \phi$.

- (3) \implies (1):

Suppose that $\#\partial f(x_0) = 1$. Since $\partial f(x_0) = \{\phi \in X^* : \phi \leq d^+f(x_0)\}$, equivalence of linearity in the section on sublinear functionals implies that $d^+f(x_0)$ is linear. This implies that $d^+f(x_0) = d^-f(x_0)$ and which implies that f is Gateaux differentiable at x_0 . □

Exercise 8.2.14. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f, g : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex, $\lambda \geq 0$ and $x_0 \in A$. Then

$$\partial f(x_0) + \lambda \partial g(x_0) \subset \partial[f + \lambda g](x_0)$$

Proof. Let $\zeta \in \partial f(x_0) + \lambda \partial g(x_0)$. Then there exist $\phi \in \partial f(x_0)$ and $\psi \in \partial g(x_0)$ such that $\zeta = \phi + \lambda\psi$. A previous exercise implies that $\phi \leq d^+f(x_0)$ and $\lambda\psi \leq \lambda d^+g(x_0) = d^+[\lambda g](x_0)$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta &= \phi + \lambda\psi \\ &\leq d^+f(x_0) + d^+[\lambda g](x_0) \\ &= d^+[f + \lambda g](x_0) \end{aligned}$$

So $\zeta \in \partial[f + \lambda g](x_0)$ □

Exercise 8.2.15. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. If f is continuous at x_0 , then f has a global minimum point at x_0 iff $0 \in \partial f(x_0)$.

Proof. Suppose that f has a global minimum point at x_0 . Let $x \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d^+f(x_0)(x) &= \lim_{t \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(x_0 + tx) - f(x_0)}{t} \\ &\geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

So $0 \leq d^+f(x_0)$ and $0 \in \partial f(x_0)$.

Conversely, suppose that $0 \in \partial f(x_0)$. Let $x \in A$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= 0(x - x_0) \\ &\leq f(x) - f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

So that $f(x_0) \leq f(x)$ which implies that f has a global minimum point at x_0 . \square

Exercise 8.2.16. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. If f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 , then $\partial f(x_0) = \{Df(x_0)\}$.

Proof. Clear. \square

Exercise 8.2.17. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 . If $Df(x_0) = 0$, then f has a global minimum point at x_0 .

Proof. Suppose that $Df(x_0) = 0$. Since $\partial f(x_0) = \{Df(x_0)\}$, a previous exercise implies that f has a global minimum point at x_0 . \square

Exercise 8.2.18. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ convex and $x_0 \in A$. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable at x_0 . Then for each $x \in A$, $f(x) \geq f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - x_0)$

Proof. Since $Df(x_0) \in \partial f(x_0)$, for each $x \in A$, $Df(x_0)(x - x_0) \leq f(x) - f(x_0)$. \square

Exercise 8.2.19. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Suppose that f is Frechet differentiable. Then f is convex iff for each $x_0, x \in A$, $f(x) \geq f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - x_0)$.

Proof. Suppose that f is convex. Then the previous exercise implies that for each $x_0, x \in A$, $f(x) \geq f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - x_0)$. Conversely, suppose that for each $x_0, x \in A$, $f(x) \geq f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - x_0)$. Let $x_0, x, y \in A$. Then $f(x) \geq f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(x - x_0)$ and $f(y) \geq f(x_0) + Df(x_0)(y - x_0)$.

FINISH!!! \square

Exercise 8.2.20. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ open and convex, and $f \in C^2(A)$. Then f is convex iff for each $x_0 \in A$, $D^2f(x_0)$ is positive semidefinite.

Hint: Define $g : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $g(x) = f(x) - Df(x_0)(x - x_0)$ and show g is convex and use Taylor's Theorem

Proof. Suppose that f is convex. Let $x_0 \in X$. Define $g : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $g(x) = f(x) - Df(x_0)(x - x_0)$. Since g is the sum of a convex function and an affine function, g is convex. Since $f \in C^2(A)$, we have that $g \in C^2(A)$ and it is straightforward to show that for each $x \in A$, $Dg(x) = Df(x) - Df(x_0)$ and $D^2g(x) = D^2f(x)$. In particular, $Dg(x_0) = 0$. Hence g has a global minimum point at x_0 . This implies that $D^2f(x_0)$ is positive semidefinite. Conversely, suppose that for each $x_0 \in A$, $D^2f(x_0)$ is positive semidefinite. Let

FINISH!!! \square

8.3. Conjugacy.

Definition 8.3.1. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Define $A^* \subset X^*$ and $f^* : A^* \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$A^* = \left\{ \phi \in X^* : \sup_{x \in A} [\phi(x) - f(x)] < \infty \right\}$$

and

$$f^*(\phi) = \sup_{x \in A} [\phi(x) - f(x)]$$

If X is a Hilbert space, we may define $A^* \subset X$ and $f^* : A^* \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ via the Riesz representation theorem by

$$A^* = \left\{ y \in X : \sup_{x \in A} [\langle y, x \rangle - f(x)] < \infty \right\}$$

and $f^* : A^* \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and

$$f^*(y) = \sup_{x \in A} [\langle y, x \rangle - f(x)]$$

Exercise 8.3.2. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then f^* is convex.

Proof. For $x \in A$, define $g_x : X^* \rightarrow [\infty, \infty)$ by $g_x(\phi) = \phi(x) - f(x)$. Then for each $x \in A$, g_x is convex since it is affine. Thus $f^* = \sup_{x \in A} g_x$ is convex. \square

Exercise 8.3.3. Let X be a Banach space, $A \subset X$ and $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then for each $x \in X$ and $\phi \in X^*$, $f(x) \geq \phi(x) - f^*(\phi)$.

Proof. Clear \square

Exercise 8.3.4.

Definition 8.3.5. Let

Definition 8.3.6. ∂f

Exercise 8.3.7.

9. TOPOLOGICAL GROUPS

9.1. Topological Groups.

Note 9.1.1. This section establishes some basic results about topological groups and gives examples of common topological groups in analysis, specifically automorphism groups of metric spaces.

Definition 9.1.2. Let G be a group and \mathcal{T} a topology on G . Then (G, \mathcal{T}) is said to be a **topological group** if the maps

- (1) $G \times G \rightarrow G$ given by $(x, y) \mapsto xy$
- (2) $G \rightarrow G$ given by $x \mapsto x^{-1}$

are continuous.

Note 9.1.3. For the remainder of this chapter, measurability is in reference to $(G, \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{T}))$. That is, the measurable sets are the Borel sets.

Definition 9.1.4. Let G be a topological group. We define

$$\text{Homeo}(G) = \{\phi : G \rightarrow G : \phi \text{ is a homeomorphism}\}$$

Note 9.1.5. Let G be a topological group. Then $\text{Homeo}(G)$ is a group.

Definition 9.1.6. Let G be a group. Define $\iota : G \rightarrow G$ by $\iota(x) = x^{-1}$.

Exercise 9.1.7. Let G be a topological group. Then $\iota \in \text{Homeo}(G)$.

Proof. By assumption ι is continuous. We know from basic group theory that ι is a bijection with $\iota^{-1} = \iota$. \square

Definition 9.1.8. Let G be a group and $S \subset G$, then S is said to be **symmetric** if $\iota(S) = S$, (i.e. $S^{-1} = S$).

Definition 9.1.9. Let G be a topological group and $\phi : G \rightarrow G$. Then ϕ is said to be an **automorphism** of G if ϕ is a homomorphism and a homeomorphism. We define

$$\text{Aut}(G) = \{\phi : G \rightarrow G : \phi \text{ is an automorphism}\}$$

Exercise 9.1.10. Let G be a topological group. Then $\iota \in \text{Aut}(G)$ iff G is abelian.

Proof. Basic group theory tells us that ι is a homomorphism iff G is abelian. \square

Definition 9.1.11. Let G be a group and $g \in G$. Define $l_g : G \rightarrow G$ and $r_g : G \rightarrow G$ by $l_g(x) = gx$ and $r_g(x) = xg^{-1}$.

Exercise 9.1.12. Let G be a topological group and $g \in G$. Then $l_g, r_g \in \text{Homeo}(G)$.

Proof. By assumption l_g and r_g are continuous. We know from basic group theory that l_g and r_g are bijections with $l_g^{-1} = l_{g^{-1}}$ and $r_g^{-1} = r_{g^{-1}}$ so l_g and r_g are homeomorphisms. \square

Exercise 9.1.13. Let G be a topological group. Define $\phi, \psi : G \rightarrow \text{Homeo}(G)$ by $\phi(g) = l_g$ and $\psi(g) = r_g$. Then ϕ, ψ are homomorphisms.

Proof. Let $g_1, g_2 \in G$. Then

$$l_{g_1} \circ l_{g_2}(x) = l_{g_1}(g_2x) = g_1g_2x = l_{g_1g_2}(x)$$

and

$$r_{g_1} \circ r_{g_2}(x) = r_{g_1}(xg_2^{-1}) = xg_2^{-1}g_1^{-1} = x(g_1g_2)^{-1} = r_{g_1g_2}(x)$$

\square

Exercise 9.1.14. Let G be a topological group. Then for each $U \subset G$ and $g \in G$, if U is open, then gU , Ug and U^{-1} are open.

Proof. Let $U \subset G$ and $g \in G$. Suppose that U is open. Since l_g, r_g and ι are homeomorphisms, $l_g(U) = gU$, $r_g(U) = Ug$ and $\iota(U) = U^{-1}$ are open. \square

Definition 9.1.15. Let G be a topological group, $y \in G$ and $f \in L^0$. Define $L_y, R_y : L^0(G) \rightarrow L^0(G)$ by $L_y f = f \circ l_y^{-1}$ and $R_y f = f \circ r_y^{-1}$, that is, $L_y f(x) = f(y^{-1}x)$ and $R_y f(x) = f(xy)$.

Exercise 9.1.16. Let G be a topological group and $y \in G$. Then $L_y, R_y \in \text{Sym}(L^0(G))$.

Proof. It is straight forward to show that $L_y^{-1} = L_{y^{-1}}$ and $R_y^{-1} = R_{y^{-1}}$. \square

Exercise 9.1.17. Let G be a topological group. Define $\phi, \psi : G \rightarrow \text{Sym}(L^0(G))$ by $\phi(y) = L_y$ and $\psi(y) = R_y$. Then ϕ and ψ are homomorphisms.

Proof. Let $y, z \in G$ and $f \in L^0(G)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} L_y \circ L_z(f) &= L_y(L_z(f)) \\ &= L_y(f \circ l_z^{-1}) \\ &= (f \circ l_z^{-1}) \circ l_y^{-1} \\ &= f \circ (l_z^{-1} \circ l_y^{-1}) \\ &= f \circ (l_y \circ l_z)^{-1} \\ &= f \circ l_{yz}^{-1} \\ &= L_{yz}(f) \end{aligned}$$

The case is similar for R_y and R_z . \square

Exercise 9.1.18. Let G be a topological group, $U \in \mathcal{B}(G)$ and $y \in G$. Then $L_y \chi_U = \chi_{yU}$ and $R_y \chi_U = \chi_{Uy^{-1}}$.

Proof. Let $x \in G$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} L_y \chi_U(x) = 1 &\iff y^{-1}x \in U \\ &\iff x \in yU \\ &\iff \chi_{yU}(x) = 1 \end{aligned}$$

The case is similar for R_y \square

Exercise 9.1.19. Let G be a topological group, $y \in G$ and $f \in L^0(G)$. Then $\text{supp}(L_y f) = y \text{supp}(f)$ and $\text{supp}(R_y f) = \text{supp}(f)y^{-1}$

Proof. Put $A = \{x \in G : L_y f(x) \neq 0\}$ and $B = \{x \in G : f(x) \neq 0\}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x \in A &\iff L_y f(x) \neq 0 \\ &\iff f(y^{-1}x) \neq 0 \\ &\iff y^{-1}x \in B \\ &\iff x \in yB \end{aligned}$$

Thus $A = yB$ which implies that $\overline{A} = y\overline{B}$. Therefore $\text{supp}(L_y f) = y \text{supp}(f)$. \square

Exercise 9.1.20. Let G be a topological group and $y \in G$. Then L_y, R_y are linear and if we restrict to the bounded measurable functions, then $L_y, R_y \in L(B(G))$ and $\|L_y\|, \|R_y\| = 1$.

Proof. Let $f, g \in L^0(G)$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} L_y(\lambda f + g)(x) &= (\lambda f + g)(y^{-1}x) \\ &= \lambda f(y^{-1}x) + g(y^{-1}x) \\ &= \lambda L_y f(x) + L_y g(x) \end{aligned}$$

So L_y is linear. Next, we restrict to $B(G) \cap L^0$. We note that

$$\{|f(y^{-1}x)| : x \in y \operatorname{supp}(f)\} = \{|f(x)| : x \in \operatorname{supp}(f)\}$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \|L_y f\|_u &= \sup_{x \in \operatorname{supp}(L_y f)} |L_y f(x)| \\ &= \sup_{x \in y \operatorname{supp}(f)} |f(y^{-1}x)| \\ &= \sup_{x \in \operatorname{supp}(f)} |f(x)| \\ &= \|f\|_u \end{aligned}$$

So L_y is bounded. Hence $L_y \in L(L^0)$. The case is similar for R_y . □

Definition 9.1.21. Let G be a topological group. We say that G is a **locally compact group** if G is locally compact and Hausdorff.

9.2. Automorphism Groups of Metric Spaces.

Definition 9.2.1. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. Define

$$\text{Aut}(X) = \{\sigma : X \rightarrow X : \sigma \text{ is a homeomorphism}\}$$

Exercise 9.2.2. Let (X, d) be a compact metric space. Then $(\text{Aut}(X), d_u)$ is a topological group.

Proof. Let $(\sigma_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}, (\tau_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset \text{Aut}(X)$ and $\sigma, \tau \in \text{Aut}(X)$. Suppose that $\sigma_n \xrightarrow{u} \sigma$ and $\tau_n \xrightarrow{u} \tau$.

- (1) Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since X is compact and σ is continuous, σ is uniformly continuous. Then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for each $x, y \in X$, $d(x, y) < \delta$ implies that $d(\sigma(x), \sigma(y)) \leq \epsilon/2$. Choose $N_\sigma \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq N_\sigma$ implies that $d_u(\sigma_n, \sigma) < \epsilon/2$. Choose $N_\tau \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq N_\tau$ implies that $d_u(\tau_n, \tau) < \delta$. Put $N = \max(N_\sigma, N_\tau)$. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $x \in X$. Suppose that $n \geq N$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d(\sigma_n \circ \tau_n(x), \sigma \circ \tau(x)) &\leq d(\sigma_n(\tau_n(x)), \sigma(\tau_n(x))) + d(\sigma(\tau_n(x)), \sigma(\tau(x))) \\ &< \epsilon/2 + \epsilon/2 \\ &= \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

So $d_u(\sigma_n \circ \tau_n, \sigma \circ \tau) \leq \epsilon$ and $\circ : \text{Aut}(X)^2 \rightarrow \text{Aut}(X)$ is continuous.

- (2) Suppose that $\sigma = \text{id}_X$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq N$ implies that $d_u(\sigma_n, \text{id}_X) < \epsilon$. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Suppose that $n \geq N$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{x \in X} d(\sigma_n^{-1}(x), x) &= \sup_{x \in \sigma_n(X)} d(\sigma_n^{-1}(x), x) \\ &= \sup_{x \in X} d(\sigma_n^{-1}(\sigma_n(x)), \sigma_n(x)) \\ &= \sup_{x \in X} d(x, \sigma_n(x)) \\ &< \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

So $\sigma_n^{-1} \xrightarrow{u} \text{id}_X$. Now suppose that $\sigma \neq \text{id}_X$. Since $\sigma_n \xrightarrow{u} \sigma$, part (1) implies that $\sigma^{-1} \circ \sigma_n \xrightarrow{u} \text{id}_X$. Applying the result from above, we get that $\sigma_n^{-1} \circ \sigma \xrightarrow{u} \text{id}_X$. Applying part (1) again implies that $\sigma_n^{-1} \xrightarrow{u} \sigma^{-1}$. So the map $\sigma \mapsto \sigma^{-1}$ is continuous.

Hence $\text{Aut}(X)$ is a topological group. \square

Definition 9.2.3. Let (X, d) be a metric space. Define

$$\text{Aut}(X, d) = \{\sigma : X \rightarrow X : \sigma \text{ is an isometric isomorphism}\}$$

Exercise 9.2.4. Let (X, d) be a compact metric space. Then $(\text{Aut}(X, d), d_u)$ is a compact subgroup of $(\text{Aut}(X), d_u)$.

Proof. Clearly, $(\text{Aut}(X, d), d_u)$ is a topological subgroup. To show compactness, use the Arzela Ascoli theorem. \square

Definition 9.2.5. Let (X, τ) be a topological space and $\mu : \mathcal{B}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a Borel measure. Define

$$\text{Aut}(X, \mu) = \{\sigma \in \text{Aut}(X) : \sigma_*\mu = \mu\}$$

Exercise 9.2.6. Let (X, d) be a compact metric space and $\mu : \mathcal{B}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ an outer-regular Borel measure. Then $\text{Aut}(X, \mu)$ is a closed subgroup of $\text{Aut}(X)$.

Proof. It is clear that $\text{Aut}(X, \mu)$ is a subgroup of $\text{Aut}(X)$. Let $(\sigma_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset \text{Aut}(X, \mathcal{B}(X), \mu)$ and $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(X)$. Suppose that $\sigma_n \xrightarrow{u} \sigma$. Let $E \subset X$ be closed, $U \subset X$ open and suppose that $E \subset U$. An exercise in the section on metric spaces tells us that there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq N$ implies that $\sigma(E) \subset \sigma_n(U)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \mu(\sigma(E)) &\leq \mu(\sigma_N(U)) \\ &= \mu(U) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, since μ is outer regular, $\mu(\sigma(E)) \leq \mu(E)$. Since $\sigma_n^{-1} \xrightarrow{u} \sigma^{-1}$, we may apply the above argument to obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} \mu(E) &= \mu(\sigma^{-1}(\sigma(E))) \\ &\leq \mu(\sigma(E)) \end{aligned}$$

Hence $\mu(E) = \mu(\sigma(E))$. Applying the whole argument above thus far to σ^{-1} , we see that $\mu(E) = \mu(\sigma^{-1}(E))$. Since $E \subset X$ is an arbitrary closed set and $\mathcal{B}(X) = \sigma(E \subset X : E \text{ is closed})$, we have that $\mu = \sigma_*\mu$. Thus $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(X, \mu)$ which implies that $\text{Aut}(X, \mu)$ is closed. \square

Definition 9.2.7. Let (X, d) be a compact metric space and $\mu : \mathcal{B}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ an outer-regular Borel measure. Define $\text{Aut}(X, d, \mu) = \text{Aut}(X, d) \cap \text{Aut}(X, \mu)$.

Exercise 9.2.8. Let (X, d) be a compact metric space and $\mu : \mathcal{B}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ an outer-regular Borel measure. Then $\text{Aut}(X, d, \mu)$ is compact.

Proof. Since $\text{Aut}(X, d)$ is compact and $\text{Aut}(X, \mu)$ is closed, $\text{Aut}(X, d, \mu)$ is compact. \square

10. GROUP ACTIONS ON METRIC SPACES

10.1. Introduction.

Note 10.1.1. For a set X , a group G and a (left) group action $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$, we will write $\phi(g, x)$ as $g \cdot x$. We denote the projection map by $\pi : X \rightarrow X/G$.

Definition 10.1.2. Let X be a set, G a group, $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action and $g \in G$. Define $l_g : X \rightarrow X$ by

$$l_g(x) = g \cdot x$$

Definition 10.1.3. Let X be a topological space, G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action. Then ϕ is said to be X -continuous if for each $g \in G$, l_g is continuous.

Exercise 10.1.4. Let X be a topological space, G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an X -continuous group action. Then for each $g \in G$, $l_g \in \text{Homeo}(X)$.

Proof. Let $g \in G$, then l_g and $l_g^{-1} = l_{g^{-1}}$ are continuous, so $l_g \in \text{Homeo}(X)$. □

Definition 10.1.5. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action. Then ϕ is said to be an **isometric group action** if for each $g \in G$, $l_g : X \rightarrow X$ is an isometry.

Exercise 10.1.6. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Then ϕ is X -continuous.

Proof. Clear since isometries are continuous. □

Definition 10.1.7. Let X be a set, G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an X -continuous group action. Let $g \in G$. Define $L_g : \mathbb{C}^X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^X$ by

$$\begin{aligned} L_g(f)(x) &= f \circ l_g^{-1} \\ &= f \circ l_{g^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$

Definition 10.1.8. Let X be a set, G a group, $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Then f is said to be **G -invariant** if for each $g \in G$, $L_g f = f$.

Exercise 10.1.9. Let X be a set, G a group, $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Then f is G -invariant iff for each $g \in G$ $x \in X$, $f(g \cdot x) = f(x)$.

Proof. Clear. □

Definition 10.1.10. Let X be a set, G a group, $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Suppose that f is G -invariant. Define $\bar{f} : X/G \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $\bar{f}(\bar{x}) = f(x)$.

Exercise 10.1.11. Let X be a set, G a group, $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Suppose that f is G -invariant. Then $f = \bar{f} \circ \pi$.

Proof. Clear. □

10.2. Induced Metrics on Orbit Spaces.

Note 10.2.1. This section establishes the criteria for the existence of a metric on the orbit space of a metric space under a group action.

Definition 10.2.2. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ a group action. We define $\bar{d} : X/G \times X/G \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ by

$$\bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = \inf_{\substack{a \in \bar{x} \\ b \in \bar{y}}} d(a, b)$$

Exercise 10.2.3. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Then for each $x, y \in X$,

$$\bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = \inf_{g \in G} d(g \cdot x, y)$$

Proof. Let $x, y \in X$, $a \in \bar{x}$ and $b \in \bar{y}$. Then there exists there exists $g_a, g_b \in G$ such that $a = g_a \cdot x$ and $b = g_b \cdot y$. Set $g = g_b^{-1} g_a$. Since the map $z \mapsto g_b^{-1} \cdot z$ is an isometry,

$$\begin{aligned} d(a, b) &= d(g_a \cdot x, g_b \cdot y) \\ &= d(g_b^{-1} g_a \cdot x, y) \\ &= d(g \cdot x, y) \end{aligned}$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exist $a^* \in \bar{x}$ and $b^* \in \bar{y}$ such that $d(a^*, b^*) < \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) + \epsilon$. The above argument implies that there exists $g^* \in G$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} \inf_{g \in G} d(g \cdot x, y) &\leq d(g^* \cdot x, y) \\ &= d(a^*, b^*) \\ &< \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) + \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since $\epsilon > 0$ is arbitrary,

$$\inf_{g \in G} d(g \cdot x, y) \leq \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$$

Conversely, since $\{(g \cdot x, y) : g \in G\} \subset \{(a, b) : a \in \bar{x}, b \in \bar{y}\}$, we have that

$$\inf_{g \in G} d(g \cdot x, y) \geq \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$$

□

Exercise 10.2.4. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Then for each $x, y, z \in X$,

$$\bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \leq \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{z}) + \bar{d}(\bar{z}, \bar{y})$$

Proof. Let $x, y, z \in X$. An exercise in section (2.1) implies that $d(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \leq d(\bar{x}, \bar{z}) + d(\bar{z}, \bar{y})$. The previous exercise implies that

$$\begin{aligned} d(\bar{x}, \bar{z}) &= \inf_{a \in \bar{x}} d(a, z) \\ &= \inf_{g \in G} d(g \cdot x, z) \\ &= \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{z}) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $d(z, \bar{y}) = \bar{d}(\bar{z}, \bar{y})$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) &\leq d(\bar{x}, z) + d(z, \bar{y}) \\ &= \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{z}) + \bar{d}(\bar{z}, \bar{y}) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 10.2.5. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. If for each $x \in X$, \bar{x} is closed, then for each $x, y \in X$, $\bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = 0$ implies that $\bar{x} = \bar{y}$.

Proof. Suppose that for each $x \in X$, \bar{x} is closed. Let $x, y \in X$. Suppose that $\bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = 0$. Then $\inf_{g \in G} d(g \cdot x, y) = 0$. Hence there exists $(g_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset G$ such that $g_n \cdot x \rightarrow y$. Since $(g_n \cdot x)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset \bar{x}$ and \bar{x} is closed, $y \in \bar{x}$. Thus $\bar{x} = \bar{y}$. □

Exercise 10.2.6. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. If for each $x \in X$, \bar{x} is closed, then \bar{d} is a metric on X/G .

Proof. Clear by preceding exercises. □

Exercise 10.2.7. Let (X, d) be a metric space, (G, τ) a topological group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that G is compact and for each $x \in X$, the map $g \mapsto g \cdot x$ is continuous. Then \bar{d} is a metric on X/G .

Proof. Let $x \in X$. Since G is compact and the map $g \mapsto g \cdot x$ is continuous, $\bar{x} = G \cdot x$ is compact and therefore closed. The previous exercise implies that \bar{d} is a metric. □

Exercise 10.2.8. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that \bar{d} is a metric on X/G . Then the projection map $\pi : X \rightarrow X/G$ is Lipschitz and therefore continuous.

Proof. Let $x, y \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{d}(\pi(x), \pi(y)) &= \bar{d}(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \\ &= \inf_{g \in G} d(g \cdot x, y) \\ &\leq d(x, y) \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 10.2.9. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that \bar{d} is a metric on X/G . Let $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X$ and $x \in X$. Then $\bar{x}_n \xrightarrow{\bar{d}} \bar{x}$ iff there exists a sequence $(g_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $g_n \cdot x_n \xrightarrow{d} x$.

Proof. Suppose that $\bar{x}_n \xrightarrow{\bar{d}} \bar{x}$. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, choose $g_n \in G$ such that $d(g_n \cdot x_n, x) < \bar{d}(\bar{x}_n, \bar{x}) + 2^{-n}$. Then $d(g_n \cdot x_n, x) \rightarrow 0$ and $g_n \cdot x_n \xrightarrow{d} x$.

Conversely, suppose that there exists a sequence $(g_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $g_n \cdot x_n \xrightarrow{d} x$. Since $\pi : X \rightarrow X/G$ is continuous, we have that

$$\begin{aligned} g_n \cdot x_n \xrightarrow{d} x &\implies \pi(g_n \cdot x_n) \xrightarrow{\bar{d}} \pi(x) \\ &\implies \bar{x}_n \xrightarrow{\bar{d}} \bar{x} \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 10.2.10. Let X be a set, $d_1, d_2 : X^2 \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ metrics, G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that d_1 and d_2 are topologically equivalent.

- (1) Then \bar{d}_1 is a metric on X/G iff \bar{d}_2 is a metric on X/G
- (2) If \bar{d}_1 and \bar{d}_2 are metrics, then \bar{d}_1 and \bar{d}_2 are topologically equivalent.

Proof.

- (1) • \implies Suppose that \bar{d}_1 is a metric. Let $x, y \in X$. Suppose that $\bar{d}_2(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = 0$. Then there exist $(g_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset G$ such that $d_2(g_n \cdot x, y) \rightarrow 0$. Since d_1 and d_2 are topologically equivalent, $d_1(g_n \cdot x, y) \rightarrow 0$. Thus $\bar{d}_1(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = 0$. Since \bar{d}_1 is a metric, $\bar{x} = \bar{y}$. Hence \bar{d}_2 is a metric.
- \impliedby Similar.
- (2) Suppose that \bar{d}_1 and \bar{d}_2 are metrics. Let $(\bar{x}_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset X/G$ and $\bar{x} \in X/G$.
 - Suppose that $\bar{x}_n \xrightarrow{\bar{d}_1} \bar{x}$. Then there exists a sequence $(g_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $g_n \cdot x_n \xrightarrow{d_1} x$. Since d_1 and d_2 are topologically equivalent, $g_n \cdot x_n \xrightarrow{d_2} x$. This implies that $\bar{x}_n \xrightarrow{\bar{d}_2} \bar{x}$.
 - Suppose that $\bar{x}_n \xrightarrow{\bar{d}_2} \bar{x}$. Then similarly to above, $\bar{x}_n \xrightarrow{\bar{d}_1} \bar{x}$.

□

Exercise 10.2.11. Let X be a set, $d_1, d_2 : X^2 \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ metrics on X , G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that d_1 and d_2 are equivalent. If \bar{d}_1 and \bar{d}_2 are metrics, then \bar{d}_1 and \bar{d}_2 are equivalent.

Proof. Suppose that \bar{d}_1 and \bar{d}_2 are metrics. Since d_1, d_2 are equivalent, there exist $C_1, C_2 > 0$ such that for each $x, y \in X$, $C_1 d_1(x, y) \leq d_2(x, y) \leq C_2 d_1(x, y)$. Let $x, y \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_1 \bar{d}_1(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) &= C_1 \inf_{g \in G} d_1(g \cdot x, y) \\
 &= \inf_{g \in G} C_1 d_1(g \cdot x, y) \\
 &\leq \inf_{g \in G} d_2(g \cdot x, y) \\
 &= \bar{d}_2(\bar{x}, \bar{y})
 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 \bar{d}_2(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) &= \inf_{g \in G} d_2(g \cdot x, y) \\
 &\leq \inf_{g \in G} C_2 d_1(g \cdot x, y) \\
 &= C_2 \inf_{g \in G} d_1(g \cdot x, y) \\
 &= C_2 \bar{d}_1(\bar{x}, \bar{y})
 \end{aligned}$$

So that $C_1 \bar{d}_1 \leq \bar{d}_2 \leq C_2 \bar{d}_1$

□

Exercise 10.2.12. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that \bar{d} is a metric. Then $\pi : X \rightarrow X/G$ is a quotient map.

Proof.

- Clearly π is surjective.

- Let $C \subset X/G$. Suppose that C is closed. Since π is continuous, if $\pi^{-1}(C)$ is closed. Conversely, suppose that $\pi^{-1}(C)$ is closed. Let $(\bar{x}_\alpha)_\alpha \subset C$ be a net and $\bar{x} \in X/G$. Suppose that $\bar{x}_\alpha \rightarrow \bar{x}$. Then there exists $(g_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset G$ such that $g_\alpha \cdot x_\alpha \rightarrow x$. Since $(g_\alpha \cdot x_\alpha)_{\alpha \in A} \subset \pi^{-1}(C)$, $x \in \pi^{-1}(C)$. Hence $\bar{x} \in C$ and C is closed. Then Exercise 4.6.4 implies that π is a quotient map. \square

Exercise 10.2.13. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that \bar{d} is a metric. Then $\pi : X \rightarrow X/G$ is open.

Proof. Let $U \subset X$. Suppose that U is open. Then

$$\pi^{-1}(\pi(U)) = \bigcup_{g \in G} g \cdot U$$

Since for each $g \in G$, $l_g \in \text{Homeo}(X)$, we have that for each $g \in G$, $g \cdot U$ is open. Therefore $\bigcup_{g \in G} g \cdot U$ is open. Hence $\pi^{-1}(\pi(U))$ is open. Then Exercise 4.6.6 implies that π is open. \square

Exercise 10.2.14. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Suppose that \bar{d} is a metric. Then \bar{d} metrizes the quotient topology $\pi_*\tau(d)$ on X/G .

Proof. Immediate by the previous exercise and Exercise 4.6.13. \square

Exercise 10.2.15. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Let $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Suppose that f is G -invariant and \bar{d} is a metric. If $f \in C(X)$, then $\bar{f} \in C(X/G)$.

Hint: Exercise 4.6.13

Proof. Suppose that $f \in C(X)$. Exercise 4.6.13 implies that $\bar{f} : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is the unique map such that $\bar{f} \circ \pi = f$ and \bar{f} is continuous. \square

Exercise 10.2.16. Let (X, d) be a metric space, G a group, and $\phi : G \times X \rightarrow X$ an isometric group action. Let $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Suppose that f is G -invariant and \bar{d} is a metric. If $f \in C(X)$, then $\bar{f} \in C(X/G)$.

Hint: Exercise 4.6.13

Proof. Suppose that $f \in C(X)$. Exercise 4.6.13 implies that $\bar{f} : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is the unique map such that $\bar{f} \circ \pi = f$ and \bar{f} is continuous. \square

10.3. Fundamental Examples.

Note 10.3.1. This section uses results from the previous two sections to establish metrics on some fundamental orbit spaces of metric spaces under a group action.

Exercise 10.3.2. Procrustes Distance:

Consider the metric space $(\mathbb{C}^{n \times d}, \|\cdot\|_F)$, topological group $(U_d, \|\cdot\|_F)$ and the (right) action $\phi : X \times U_d \rightarrow X$ by $X \cdot U = XU$. Then

- (1) ϕ is a continuous isometric group action
- (2) U_d is compact
- (3) \bar{d} is a metric on $\mathbb{C}^{n \times d}/U_d$

Proof. Clear. □

Exercise 10.3.3. Let X be a compact metric space and $\mu : \mathcal{B}(X) \rightarrow [0, \infty]$ a Borel measure. Define the (right) group action $\phi : L^1(\mu) \times \text{Aut}(X, \mu) \rightarrow L^1(\mu)$ by

$$f \cdot \sigma = f \circ \sigma$$

Then ϕ is an isometric group action.

Proof. Let $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(X, \mu)$ and $f \in L^1(\mu)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|f \cdot \sigma\|_1 &= \int_X |f \circ \sigma| d\mu \\ &= \int_X |f| \circ \sigma d\mu \\ &= \int_{\sigma(X)} |f| d\sigma_*\mu \\ &= \int_{\sigma(X)} |f| d\mu \\ &= \int_X |f| d\mu \\ &= \|f\|_1 \end{aligned}$$

□

Exercise 10.3.4. Let X be a compact metric space and $\mu : \mathcal{B}(X) \rightarrow [0, \infty]$ a Radon measure. Define the (right) group action $\phi : L^1(\mu) \times \text{Aut}(X, \mu) \rightarrow L^1(\mu)$ by

$$f \cdot \sigma = f \circ \sigma$$

Then for each $f \in L^1(\mu)$, the map $\sigma \mapsto f \cdot \sigma$ is continuous.

Proof. Let $f \in L^1(\mu)$, $(\sigma_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \subset \text{Aut}(X, \mu)$ and $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(X, \mu)$. Suppose that $\sigma_n \xrightarrow{u} \sigma$. Since μ is Radon, $C_c(X)$ is dense in $L^1(\mu)$ and therefore, there exists $\phi \in C_c(X)$ such that $\|\phi - f\| < \epsilon/3$. Since X is compact and μ is Radon, $\mu(X) < \infty$. Since ϕ is uniformly continuous, Exercise 3.1.17 implies that $\phi \circ \sigma_n \xrightarrow{u} \phi \circ \sigma$. So there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq N$ implies that $\|\phi \circ \sigma_n - \phi \circ \sigma\|_u < \frac{\epsilon}{3(\mu(X)+1)}$. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Suppose that

$n \geq \mathbb{N}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|f \circ \sigma_n - f \circ \sigma\|_1 &\leq \|f \circ \sigma_n - \phi \circ \sigma_n\|_1 + \|\phi \circ \sigma_n - \phi \circ \sigma\|_1 + \|\phi \circ \sigma - f \circ \sigma\|_1 \\
 &= \|(f - \phi) \circ \sigma_n\|_1 + \|\phi \circ \sigma_n - \phi \circ \sigma\|_1 + \|(\phi - f) \circ \sigma\|_1 \\
 &= \|f - \phi\|_1 + \|\phi \circ \sigma_n - \phi \circ \sigma\|_1 + \|\phi - f\|_1 \\
 &= \|f - \phi\|_1 + \|\phi \circ \sigma_n - \phi \circ \sigma\|_{u\mu(X)} + \|\phi - f\|_1 \\
 &< \frac{\epsilon}{3} + \frac{\epsilon}{3} + \frac{\epsilon}{3} \\
 &= \epsilon
 \end{aligned}$$

So that $f \circ \sigma_n \xrightarrow{u} f \circ \sigma$ which implies that the map $\sigma \mapsto f \cdot \sigma$ is continuous. \square

Exercise 10.3.5. Cut Distance:

Let X be a compact metric space and $\mu : \mathcal{B}(X) \rightarrow [0, \infty]$ a Radon measure. Define the (right) group action $\phi : L^1(\mu) \times \text{Aut}(X, \mu) \rightarrow L^1(\mu)$ by

$$f \cdot \sigma = f \circ \sigma$$

Then

- (1) ϕ is an isometric group action
- (2) $\text{Aut}(X, d, \mu)$ is compact
- (3) for each $f \in L^1(\mu)$, the map $\sigma \mapsto f \cdot \sigma$ is continuous.
- (4) \bar{d} is a metric on $L^1(\mu)/\text{Aut}(X, d, \mu)$

Proof. Clear by the preceding exercises. \square

Note 10.3.6. The preceding distance is not quite the Cut distance, as the Cut norm only considers a subset of measurable sets for a function of two variables, but with some work, maybe I can show it is a distance.

11. APPENDIX

11.1. Summation.

Definition 11.1.1. Let $f : X \rightarrow [0, \infty)$, Then we define

$$\sum_{x \in X} f(x) := \sup_{\substack{F \subset X \\ F \text{ finite}}} \sum_{x \in F} f(x)$$

This definition coincides with the usual notion of summation when X is countable. For $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$, we can write $f = g + ih$ where $g, h : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. If

$$\sum_{x \in X} |f(x)| < \infty,$$

then the same is true for g^+, g^-, h^+, h^- . In this case, we may define

$$\sum_{x \in X} f(x)$$

in the obvious way.

The following note justifies the notation $\sum_{x \in X} f(x)$ where $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$.

Note 11.1.2. Let $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ and $\alpha : X \rightarrow X$ a bijection. If $\sum_{x \in X} |f(x)| < \infty$, then $\sum_{x \in X} f(\alpha(x)) = \sum_{x \in X} f(x)$.

11.2. Asymptotic Notation.

Definition 11.2.1. Let X be a topological space, Y, Z be normed vector spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$, $g : X \rightarrow Z$ and $x_0 \in X \cup \{\infty\}$. Then we write

$$f = o(g) \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow x_0$$

if for each $\epsilon > 0$, there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$ such that for each $x \in U$,

$$\|f(x)\| \leq \epsilon \|g(x)\|$$

Exercise 11.2.2. Let X be a topological space, Y, Z be normed vector spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$, $g : X \rightarrow Z$ and $x_0 \in X \cup \{\infty\}$. If there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$ such that for each $x \in U \setminus \{x_0\}$, $g(x) > 0$, then

$$f = o(g) \text{ as } x \rightarrow x_0 \quad \text{iff} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} \frac{\|f(x)\|}{\|g(x)\|} = 0$$

Exercise 11.2.3. Let X and Y be normed vector spaces, $A \subset X$ open and $f : A \rightarrow Y$. Suppose that $0 \in A$. If $f(h) = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$, then for each $h \in X$, $f(th) = o(|t|)$ as $t \rightarrow 0$.

Proof. Suppose that $f(h) = o(\|h\|)$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. Let $h \in X$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta' > 0$ such that for each $h' \in B(0, \delta')$, $h' \in A$ and

$$\|f(h')\| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{\|h\| + 1} \|h'\|$$

Choose $\delta > 0$ such that for each $t \in B(0, \delta)$, $th \in B(0, \delta')$. Let $t \in B(0, \delta)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \|f(th)\| &\leq \frac{\epsilon}{\|h\| + 1} |t| \|h\| \\ &< \epsilon |t| \end{aligned}$$

So $f(th) = o(|t|)$ as $t \rightarrow 0$. □

Definition 11.2.4. Let X be a topological space, Y, Z be normed vector spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$, $g : X \rightarrow Z$ and $x_0 \in X \cup \{\infty\}$. Then we write

$$f = O(g) \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow x_0$$

if there exists $U \in \mathcal{N}_{x_0}$ and $M \geq 0$ such that for each $x \in U$,

$$\|f(x)\| \leq M \|g(x)\|$$

REFERENCES

- [1] [Introduction to Algebra](#)
- [2] [Introduction to Analysis](#)
- [3] [Introduction to Fourier Analysis](#)
- [4] [Introduction to Measure and Integration](#)